



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

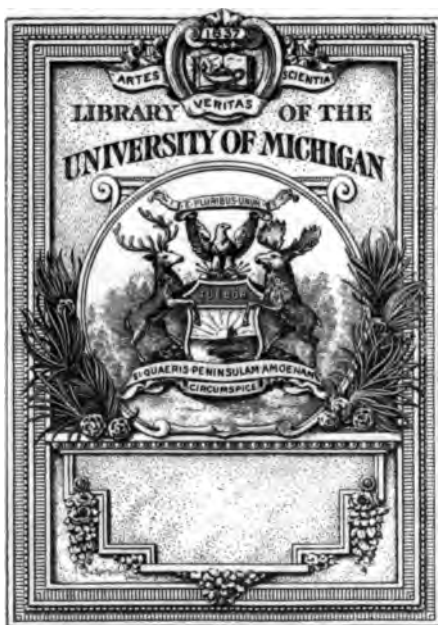
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>















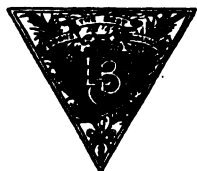
How to Do It

TO WHICH IS ADDED

How to Live

BY

EDWARD EVERETT HALE



BOSTON

LITTLE, BROWN, AND COMPANY

1900

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871,
BY JAMES R. OSGOOD AND COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1886,
BY THEODORE L. FLOOD,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Copyright, 1900,
BY LITTLE, BROWN, AND COMPANY.

All rights reserved.

University Press
JOHN WILSON AND SON, CAMBRIDGE, U.S.A.



THE WORKS OF
EDWARD EVERETT HALE

Library Edition

VOLUME VII.

HOW TO DO IT
HOW TO LIVE





1701



UOF M

Father and Son



PREFACE

SINCE I have been able to think of such things, I have been surprised that there are so few books on what may be called "Practical Ethics." I could take down from my own shelves three hundred books which discuss the origin of the moral sense,— why there are duties and why we should try to discharge them. But in the same collection of books I should find it hard to select twenty on the details of the practical business of life. I have a few books, very few, which tell how to skate, how to swim, and how to ride on horseback. These certainly belong to what I should call "Practical Ethics." But when you ascend a little from that grade of duties, the books of practical advice are fewer and fewer.

When I entered college, for instance, no one told me, by word of mouth or in writing, anything of the practical management of the fifteen hours a day which were given into my care. I knew, in general, that I ought to be regular in my recitations, and that I ought to know my lesson when I arrived there. But nobody told me whether it were better to study between nine and ten

o'clock in the evening or between six and seven in the morning.

A distinguished clergyman, always an invalid when I knew him, a little before me in college, told me, when near the end of his life, that his broken health was due to his absolute neglect of physical exercise during the first three and a half years that he was at Cambridge. He was profoundly interested in his studies, and was engrossed in them. Nobody ever told him that physical exercise had anything to do with health. He told me that week after week would pass in which he did not leave the College Yard. In our day things were a little better, but not much better.

When we were seniors, we were made to hear Dr. John Ware deliver a course of lectures on the preserving of health, and very good lectures they were. Our joke about them was, that we heard them after our constitutions were entirely broken. But as to any practical lessons in mental, moral, or spiritual hygiene, with the exception of a hint you sometimes got in a sermon, nobody seemed to care.

In the volume in the reader's hands, he will find one of Dr. Lieber's rules for Girard College: "No mathematical exercise is to be attempted for two hours after a hearty meal." When I read this, in 1842, it was to recollect that in my freshman year we were ordered daily from the dining-room to the room opposite for the hour's difficult exercise in geometry or trigonometry.

The volume in the reader's hands consists of



Preface

vii

different essays of mine, selected from a much larger number, written to meet, as well as I knew how, these difficulties. "How to Do It" was a separate book, made up from eight articles originally published in the magazine called "Our Young Folks," and eight others, written in some sort as a sequel to these, for the weekly newspaper called "The Youth's Companion." I have been pleased to know that it has been introduced as a text-book in some of the high schools at the West, where perhaps they are not so much afraid of heresy or other indiscretion as we are at the East.

When Mr. Lowell asked me to deliver a course of Lowell lectures in Boston in the year 1869, I gladly consented, on the condition that I might lecture on the Divine Method in Human Life. The lectures were an attempt to give practical instruction in the duties of sleep, of the regulation of appetite, and exercise; these three for the body. Again, for the training of the mind in the processes of memory, logic, and the imagination; and again there were three more on the enlargement of life in the three eternities, Faith, Hope, and Love.

In the year 1886, at Dr. Vincent's request, I enlarged and printed these lectures, as the ethical lessons of the year in the great Chautauqua Course. In this form, under the general title "How to Live," those papers are included in this volume. A few other essays in similar lines, all that the volume gives room for, are added.

I may as well say here in a few words, what is implied in a dozen places in the book, that education in morals is the prime object for which schools should be maintained. Instruction in facts, to which so much time is generally given, is not the prime object in education.

EDWARD E. HALE.

39 HIGHLAND ST., ROXBURY, MASS.,

Jan. 26, 1900.



CONTENTS

HOW TO DO IT

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTORY. — HOW WE MET	1
II. HOW TO TALK	19
III. TALK	34
IV. HOW TO WRITE	50
V. HOW TO READ. I.	71
VI. HOW TO READ. II.	93
VII. HOW TO GO INTO SOCIETY	105
VIII. HOW TO TRAVEL	118
IX. LIFE AT SCHOOL	132
X. LIFE IN VACATION	139
XI. LIFE ALONE	145
XII. HABITS IN CHURCH	157
XIII. LIFE WITH CHILDREN	163
XIV. LIFE WITH YOUR ELDERS	171
XV. HABITS OF READING	179
XVI. GETTING READY	186

- II. HOW TO CHOOSE ONE'S CAL
- III. HOW TO SLEEP
- IV. HOW TO EXERCISE
- V. APPETITE
- VI. HOW TO THINK
- VII. HOW TO STUDY
- VIII. HOW TO KNOW GOD . . .
- IX. HOW TO BEAR YOUR BROTH
- X. HOW TO REGULATE EXPENSI
- XI. HOW TO DRESS
- XII. HOW TO DEAL WITH ONE'S (
- XIII. HOW TO REMAIN YOUNG .
- XIV. DUTY TO THE CHURCH . .
- XV. DUTY TO THE STATE . . .



HOW TO DO IT



CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY — HOW WE MET

THE papers which are here collected enter in some detail into the success and failure of a large number of young people of my acquaintance, who are here named as —

ALICE FAULCONBRIDGE,	HORACE FELLTHAM,
BOB EDMESTON,	JANE SMITH,
CLARA,	JO GRESHAM,
CLEM WATERS,	JUSTIN,
EDWARD HOLIDAY,	LAURA WALTER,
ELLEN LISTON,	MAUD INGLETREE,
EMMA FORTINBRAS,	OLIVER FERGUSON, <i>brother to</i>
ENOCH PUTNAM, <i>brother of</i>	ASAPH and GEORGE,
HORACE,	PAULINE,
ESTHER,	RACHEL,
FANCHON,	ROBERT,
FANNY, <i>cousin to</i> HATTY	SARAH CLAVERS,
FIELDING,	STEPHEN,
FLORENCE,	SYBIL,
FRANK,	THEODORA,
GEORGE FERGUSON (ASAPH	TOM RISING,
FERGUSON'S <i>brother</i>),	WALTER,
HATTY FIELDING,	WILLIAM HACKMATACK,
HERBERT,	WILLIAM WITHERS.
HORACE PUTNAM,	

It may be observed that there are thirty-four of them. They make up a very nice set, or would do so if they belonged together. But, in truth, they live in many regions, not to say countries. None of them are too bright or too stupid, only one of them is really selfish, all but one or two are thoroughly sorry for their faults when they commit them, and all of them who are good for anything think of themselves very little. There are a few who are approved members of the Harry Wadsworth Club. That means that they "look up and not down," they "look forward and not back," they "look out and not in," and they "lend a hand." These papers were first published, much as they are now collected, in the magazine *Our Young Folks*, and in that admirable weekly paper *The Youth's Companion*, which is held in grateful remembrance by a generation now tottering off the stage, and welcomed, as I see, with equal interest by the grandchildren as they totter on. From time to time, therefore, as the different series have gone on, I have received pleasant notes from other young people, whose acquaintance I have thus made with real pleasure, who have asked more explanation as to the points involved. I have thus been told that my friend Mr. Henry Ward Beecher is not governed by all my rules for young people's composition, and that Miss Throckmorton, the governess, does not believe Archbishop Whately is infallible. I have once and



Introductory

3

again been asked how I made the acquaintance of such a nice set of children. And I can well believe that many of my young correspondents would in that matter be glad to be as fortunate as I.

Perhaps, then, I shall do something to make the little book more intelligible, and to connect its parts, if in this introduction I tell of the one occasion when the *dramatis personæ* met each other; and in order to that, if I tell how they all met me.

First of all, then, my dear young friends, I began active life as soon as I had left college, as I can well wish all of you might do. I began in keeping school. Not that I want to have any of you do this long, unless an evident fitness or "manifest destiny" appear so to order. But you may be sure that, for a year or two of the start of life, there is nothing that will teach you your own ignorance so well as having to teach children the few things you know, and to answer, as best you can, their questions on all grounds. There was poor Jane, on the first day of that charming visit with the Penroses, who was betrayed by the simplicity and cordiality of the dinner-table — where she was the youngest of ten or twelve strangers — into taking a protective lead of all the conversation, till at the very last I heard her explaining to dear Mr. Tom Coram himself, — a gentleman who had lived in Java ten years, — that coffee-berries were red when they were ripe. I

was sadly mortified for my poor Jane as Tom's eyes twinkled. She would never have got into that rattletrap way of talking if she had kept school for two years. Here, again, is a capital letter from Oliver Ferguson, Asaph's younger brother, describing his life on the Island at Paris all through the siege. I should have sent it yesterday to Mr. Osgood, who would be delighted to print it in the *Atlantic Monthly*, but that the spelling is disgraceful. Mr. Osgood and Mr. Howells would think Oliver a fool before they had read down the first page. "L-i-n, lin, n-e-n, nen, linen." Think of that! Oliver would never have spelled "linen" like that if he had been two years a teacher. You can go through four years at Harvard College spelling so, but you cannot go through two years as a schoolmaster.

Well, I say I was fortunate enough to spend two years as an assistant schoolmaster at the old Boston Latin School, — the oldest institution of learning, as we are fond of saying, in the United States. And there first I made my manhood's acquaintance with boys.

"Do you think," said dear Dr. Malone to me one day, "that my son Robert will be too young to enter college next August?" "How old will he be?" said I, and I was told. Then as Robert was at that moment just six months younger than I, who had already graduated, I said, wisely, that I thought he would do; and Dr. Malone chuckled, I doubt not, as I did certainly, at the gravity of



Introductory 5

my answer. A nice set of boys I had. I had above me two of the most loyal and honorable of gentlemen, who screened me from all reproof for my blunders. My discipline was not of the best, but my purposes were; and I and the boys got along admirably.

It was the old schoolhouse. I believe I shall explain in another place, in this volume, that it stood where Parker's Hotel stands, and my room occupied the spot in space where you, Florence, and you, Theodora, dined with your aunt Dorcas last Wednesday before you took the cars for Andover, — the ladies' dining-room looking on what was then Cooke's Court, and is now Chapman Place. Cooke was Elisha Cooke, who went to England for the charter. So Mr. Saltonstall reminds me. What we call "Province Street" was then "Governor's Alley." For in Province Court, the building now Sargent's Hotel was for a century, more or less, the official residence of the Governor of Massachusetts. It was the "Province House."

On the top of it, for a weathercock, was the large mechanical brazen Indian, who, whenever he heard the Old South clock strike twelve, shot off his brazen arrow. The little boys used to hope to see this. But just as twelve came was the bustle of dismissal, and I have never seen one who did see him, though for myself I know he did as was said, and have never questioned it. That opportunity, however, was upstairs, in Mr. Dixwell's

room. In my room, in the basement, we had no such opportunity.

The glory of our room was that it was supposed, rightly or not, that a part of it was included in the old schoolhouse which was there before the Revolution. There were old men still living who remembered the troublous times, the times that stirred boys' souls, as the struggle for independence began. I have myself talked with Jonathan Darby Robins, who was himself one of the committee who waited on the British general to demand that their coasting should not be obstructed. There is a reading piece about it in one of the school-books. This general was not Gage, as he is said to be in the histories, but General Haldimand; and his quarters were at the house which stood nearly where Franklin's statue stands now, just below King's Chapel. His servant had put ashes on the coast which the boys had made, on the sidewalk which passes the Chapel as you go down School Street. When the boys remonstrated, the servant ridiculed them,—he was not going to mind a gang of rebel boys. So the boys, who were much of their fathers' minds, appointed a committee, of whom my friend was one, to wait on General Haldimand himself. They called on him, and they told him that coasting was one of their inalienable rights and that he must not take it away. The General knew too well that the people of the town must not be irritated to take up his servant's quarrel, and he told the boys that their coast should



Introductory

7

not be interfered with. So they carried their point. The story-book says that he clasped his hands and said, "Heavens! Liberty is in the very air! Even these boys speak of their rights as do their patriot sires!" But of this Mr. Robins told me nothing, and as Haldimand was a Russian officer of no great enthusiasm for liberty, I do not, for my part, believe it. ✓

The morning of April 19, 1775, Harrison Gray Otis, then a little boy eight years old, came down Beacon Street to school, and found a brigade of red-coats in line along Common Street,—as Tremont Street was then called,—so that he could not cross into School Street. They were Earl Percy's brigade. Class in history, where did Percy's brigade go that day, and what became of them before night? A red-coat corporal told the Otis boy to walk along Common Street and not try to cross the line. So he did. He went as far as Scollay's Building before he could turn their flank, then he went down to what you call Washington Street, and came up to school,—late. Whether his excuse would have been sufficient I do not know. He was never asked for it. He came into school just in time to hear old Lovel, the Tory schoolmaster, say, "War's begun and school's done. *Dimittite libros*,"—which means, "Put away your books." They put them away, and had a vacation of a year and nine months thereafter, before the school was open again.

Well, in this old school I had spent four years

of my boyhood, and here, as I say, my manhood's acquaintance with boys began. I taught them Latin, and sometimes mathematics. Some of them will remember a famous Latin poem we wrote about Pocahontas and John Smith. All of them will remember how they capped Latin verses against the master, twenty against one, and put him down. These boys used to cluster round my table at recess and talk. Danforth Newcomb, a lovely, gentle, accurate boy, almost always at the head of his class, — he died young. Shang-hae, San Francisco, Berlin, Paris, Australia, — I don't know what cities, towns, and countries have the rest of them. And when they take this book for their own boys, they will find some of their boy-stories here.

Then there was Mrs. Merriam's¹ boarding-school. If you will read the chapter on travelling you will find about one of the vacations of her girls. Mrs. Merriam was one of Mr. Ingham's old friends, — and he is a man with whom I have had a great deal to do. Mrs. Merriam opened a school for twelve girls. I knew her very well, and so it came that I knew her ways with them. Though it was a boarding-school, still the girls had just as "good a time" as they had at home, and when I found that some of them asked leave to spend vacation with her I knew they had better times. I remember perfectly the day when Mrs. Phillips asked them down to the old mansion-house, which

¹ For "Mrs. Merriam," see "Mrs. Merriam's Scholars." Her pupils remember her as Miss Hannah Stearns.



Introductory

9

seems so like home to me, to eat peaches. And it was determined that the girls should not think they were under any "company" restraint, so no person but themselves was present when the peaches were served, and every girl ate as many as for herself she determined best. When they all rode horseback, Mrs. Merriam and I used to ride together with these young folks, behind or before, as it listed them. So, not unnaturally, being a friend of the family, I came to know a good many of them very well.

For another set of them — you may choose the names to please yourselves — the history of my relationship goes back to the Sunday-school of the Church of the Unity in Worcester. The first time I ever preached in that church, namely, May 3, 1846, there was but one person in it who had gray hair. All of us of that day have enough now. But we were a set of young people, starting on a new church, which had, I assure you, no dust in the pulpit-cushions. And almost all the children were young, as you may suppose. The first meeting of the Sunday-school showed, I think, thirty-six children, and more of them were under nine than over. They are all twenty-five years older now than they were then. Well, we started without a library for the Sunday-school. But in a corner of my study Jo Matthews and I put up some three-cornered shelves, on which I kept about a hundred books such as children like, and young people who are no longer children; and then,

as I sat reading, writing, or stood fussing over my fuchsias or labelling the mineralogical specimens, there would come in one or another nice girl or boy, to borrow a "Rollo" or a "Franconia," or to see if Ellen Liston had returned "Amy Herbert." And so we got very good chances to find each other out. It is not a bad plan for a young minister, if he really want to know what the young folk of his parish are. I know it was then and there that I conceived the plan of writing "Margaret Percival in America" as a sequel to Miss Sewell's "Margaret Percival," and that I wrote my half of that history.

The Worcester Sunday-school grew beyond thirty-six scholars; and I have since had to do with two other Sunday-schools, where, though the children did not know it, I felt as young as the youngest of them all. And in that sort of life you get chances to come at nice boys and nice girls which most people in the world do not have.

And the last of all the congresses of young people which I will name, where I have found my favorites, shall be the vacation congresses, — when people from all the corners of the world meet at some country hotel, and wonder who the others are the first night, and, after a month, wonder again how they ever lived without knowing each other as brothers and sisters. I never had a nicer time than that day when we celebrated Arthur's birthday by going up to Greely's Pond.



Introductory

11

"Could Amelia walk so far? She only eight years old, and it was the whole of five miles by a wood-road, and five miles to come back again." Yes, Amelia was certain she could. Then, "whether Arthur could walk so far, he being nine." Why, of course he could if Amelia could. So eight-year-old, nine-year-old, ten-year-old, eleven-year-old, and all the rest of the ages,—we tramped off together, and we stumbled over the stumps, and waded through the mud, and tripped lightly, like Sonnambula in the opera, over the log bridges, which were single logs and nothing more, and came successfully to Greely's Pond,—beautiful lake of Egeria that it is, hidden from envious and lazy men by forest and rock and mountain. And the children of fifty years old and less pulled off shoes and stockings to wade in it; and we caught in tin mugs little seedling trouts not so long as that word "seedling" is on the page, and saw them swim in the mugs and set them free again; and we ate the lunches with appetites as of Arcadia; and we stumped happily home again, and found, as we went home, all the sketch-books and bait-boxes and neckties which we had lost as we went up. On a day like that you get intimate, if you were not intimate before.

Oh dear! don't you wish you were at Waterville now?

Now, if you please, my dear Fanchon, we will not go any further into the places where I got acquainted with the heroes and heroines of this

book. Allow, of those mentioned here, four to the Latin school, five to the Unity Sunday-school, six to the South Congregational, seven to vacation acquaintance, credit me with nine children of my own and ten brothers and sisters, and you will find no difficulty in selecting who of these are which of those, if you have ever studied the science of "Indeterminate Analysis" in Professor Smythe's Algebra.

"Dear Mr. Hale, you are making fun of us. We never know when you are in earnest."

Do not be in the least afraid, dear Florence. Remember that a central rule for comfort in life is this, "Nobody was ever written down an ass, except by himself."

Now I will tell you how and when the particular thirty-four names above happened to come together.

We were, a few of us, staying at the White Mountains. I think no New England summer is quite perfect unless you stay at least a day in the White Mountains. "Staying in the White Mountains" does not mean climbing on top of a stage-coach at Centre Harbor, and riding by day and by night for forty-eight hours till you fling yourself into a railroad-car at Littleton, and cry out that "you have done them." No. It means just living with a prospect before your eye of a hundred miles' radius, as you may have at Bethlehem or the Flume; or, perhaps, a valley and a set of hills, which never by accident look twice the same, as



Introductory

13

you may have at the Glen House or Dolly Cop's or at Waterville; or with a gorge behind the house, which you may thread and thread and thread day in and out, and still not come out upon the cleft rock from which flows the first drop of the lovely stream, as you may do at Jackson. It means living front to front, lip to lip, with Nature at her loveliest, Echo at her most mysterious, with Heaven at its brightest and Earth at its greenest, and, all this time, breathing, with every breath, an atmosphere which is the elixir of life, so pure and sweet and strong. At Greely's you are, I believe, on the highest land inhabited in America. That land has a pure air upon it. Well, as I say, we were staying in the White Mountains. Of course the young folks wanted to go up Mount Washington. We had all been up Osceola and Black Mountain, and some of us had gone up on Mount Carter, and one or two had been on Mount Lafayette. But this was as nothing till we had stood on Mount Washington himself. So I told Hatty Fielding and Laura to go on to the railroad-station and join a party we knew that were going up from there, while Jo Gresham and Stephen and the two Fergusons and I would go up on foot by a route I knew from Randolph over the real Mount Adams. Nobody had been up that particular branch of Israel's run since Channing and I did in 1841. Will Hackmatack, who was with us, had a blister on his foot, so he went with the riding party. He said

that was the reason, perhaps he thought so. The truth was he wanted to go with Laura, and nobody need be ashamed of that any day.

I spare you the account of Israel's river, and of the lovely little cascade at its very source, where it leaps out between two rocks. I spare you the hour when we lay under the spruces while it rained, and the little birds, ignorant of men and boys, hopped tamely round us. I spare you even the rainbow, more than a semicircle, which we saw from Mount Adams. Safely, wetly, and hungry, we five arrived at the Tiptop House about six, amid the congratulations of those who had ridden. The two girls and Will had come safely up by the cars, — and who do you think had got in at the last moment when the train started but Pauline and her father, who had made a party up from Portland and had with them Ellen Liston and Sarah Clavers? And who do you think had appeared in the Glen House party, when they came, but Esther and her mother and Edward Holiday and his father? Up to this moment of their lives some of these young people had never seen other some. But some had, and we had not long been standing on the rocks making out Sebago and the water beyond Portland before they were all very well acquainted. All fourteen of us went in to supper, and were just beginning on the goat's milk, when a cry was heard that a party of young men in uniform were approaching from the head of Tuckerman's Ravine. Jo and Oliver ran



Introductory

15

out, and in a moment returned to wrench us all from our corn-cakes that we might welcome the New Limerick boat-club, who were on a pedestrian trip and had come up the Tuckerman Notch that day. Nice, brave fellows they were, — a little foot-sore. Who should be among them but Tom himself and Bob Edmeston. They all went and washed, and then with some difficulty we all got through tea, when the night party from the Notch House was announced on horseback, and we sallied forth to welcome them. Nineteen in all, from all nations. Two Japanese princes, and the Secretary of the Dutch legation, and so on, as usual; but what was not as usual, jolly Mr. Waters and his jollier wife were there, — she astride on her saddle, as is the sensible fashion of the Notch House, — and, in the long stretching line, we made out Clara Waters and Clem, not together, but Clara with a girl whom she did not know, but who rode better than she, and had whipped both horses with a rattan she had. And who should this girl be but Sybil Dyer!

As the party filed up, and we lifted tired girls and laughing mothers off the patient horses, I found that a lucky chance had thrown Maud and her brother Stephen into the same caravan. There was great kissing when my girls recognized Maud, and when it became generally known that I was competent to introduce to others such pretty and bright people as she and Laura and Sarah Clavers were, I found myself

very popular, of a sudden, and in quite general demand.

And I bore my honors meekly, I assure you. I took nice old Mrs. Van Astrachan out to a favorite rock of mine to see the sunset, and, what was more marvellous, the heavy thunder-cloud, which was beating up against the wind; and I left the young folks to themselves, only aspiring to be a Youth's Companion. I got Will to bring me Mrs. Van Astrachan's black furs, as it grew cold, but at last the air was so sharp and the storm clearly so near, that we were all driven in to that nice, cosey parlor at the Tiptop House, and sat round the hot stove, not sorry to be sheltered, indeed, when we heard the heavy rain on the windows.

We fell to telling stories, and I was telling of the last time I was there, when, by great good luck, Starr King turned up, having come over Madison afoot, when I noticed that Hall, one of those patient giants who kept the house, was called out, and, in a moment more, that he returned and whispered his partner out. In a minute more they returned for their rubber capes, and then we learned that a man had staggered into the stable half frozen and terribly frightened, announcing that he had left some people lost just by the Lake of the Clouds. Of course, we were all immensely excited for half an hour or less, when Hall appeared with a very wet woman, all but senseless, on his shoulder, with her hair hanging down



Introductory

17

to the ground. The ladies took her into an inner room, stripped off her wet clothes, and rubbed her dry and warm, gave her a little brandy, and dressed her in the dry linens Mrs. Hall kept ready. Who should she prove to be, of all the world, but Emma Fortinbras! The men of the party were her father and her brothers Frank and Robert.

No! that is not all. After the excitement was over they joined us in our circle round the stove, — and we should all have been in bed, but that Mr. Hall told such wonderful bear-stories, and it was after ten o'clock that we were still sitting there. The shower had quite blown over, when a cheery French horn was heard, and the cheery Hall, who was never surprised, I believe, rushed out again, and I need not say Oliver rushed out with him and Jo Gresham, and before long we all rushed out to welcome the last party of the day.

These were horseback people, who had come by perhaps the most charming route of all, — which is also the oldest of all, — from what was Ethan Crawford's. They did not start till noon. They had taken the storm, wisely, in a charcoal camp, — and there are worse places, — and then they had spurred up, and here they were. Who were they? Why, there was an army officer and his wife, who proved to be Alice Faulconbridge, and with her was Hatty Fielding's Cousin Fanny, and besides them were Will Withers and his sister

Florence, who had made a charming quartette party with Walter and his sister Theodora, and on this ride had made acquaintance for the first time with Colonel Mansfield and Alice. All this was wonderful enough to me, as Theodora explained it to me when I lifted her off her horse, but when I found that Horace Putnam and his brother Enoch were in the same train, I said I did believe in astrology.

For though I have not named Jane Smith nor Fanchon, that was because you did not recognize them among the married people in the Crawford House party, — and I suppose you did not recognize Herbert either. How should you? But, in truth, here we all were up above the clouds on the night of the 25th of August.

Did not those Ethan Crawford people eat as if they had never seen biscuits? And when at last they were done, Stephen, who had been out in the stables, came in with a black boy he found there, who had his fiddle; and as the Colonel Mansfield party came in from the dining-room, Steve screamed out, "Take your partners for a Virginia Reel." No! I do not know whose partner was who; only this, that there were seventeen boys and men and seventeen girls or women, besides me and Mrs. Van Astrachan and Colonel Mansfield and Pauline's mother. And we danced till for one I was almost dead, and then we went to bed, to wake up at five in the morning to see the sunrise.



How to Talk

19

As we sat on the rocks, on the eastern side, I introduced Stephen to Sybil Dyer, — the last two who had not known each other. And I got talking with a circle of young folks about what the communion of saints is, — meaning, of course, just such unselfish society as we had there. And so dear Laura said, "Why will you not write us down something of what you are saying, Mr. Hale?" And Jo Gresham said, "Pray do, — pray do; if it were only to tell us —

"HOW TO DO IT."

CHAPTER II

HOW TO TALK

I WISH the young people who propose to read any of these papers to understand to whom they are addressed. My friend, Frederic Ingham, has a nephew, who went to New York on a visit, and while there occupied himself in buying "travel-presents" for his brothers and sisters at home. His funds ran low; and at last he found that he had still three presents to buy and only thirty-four cents with which to buy them. He made the requisite calculation as to how much he should have for each, — looked in at Ball and Black's, and at Tiffany's, priced an amethyst necklace, which he thought Clara would like, and a set of cameos for Fanfan, and found them beyond his reach. He then tried at a nice little toy-shop there is a little below the Fifth Avenue House,

on the west, where a "clever" woman and a good-natured girl keep the shop, and, having there made one or two vain endeavors to suit himself, asked the good-natured girl if she had not "got anything a fellow could buy for about eleven cents." She found him first one article, then another, and then another. Wat bought them all, and had one cent in his pocket when he came home.

In much the same way these several articles of mine have been waiting in the bottom of my inkstand and the front of my head for seven or nine years, without finding precisely the right audience or circle of readers. I explained to Mr. Fields — the amiable Sheik of the amiable tribe who prepare the *Young Folks* for the young folks — that I had six articles all ready to write, but that they were meant for girls say from thirteen to seventeen, and boys say from fourteen to nineteen. I explained that girls and boys of this age never read the *Atlantic*, Oh, no, not by any means! And I supposed that they never read the *Young Folks*, Oh, no, not by any means! I explained that I could not preach them as sermons, because many of the children at church were too young, and a few of the grown people were too old; that I was, therefore, detailing them in conversation to such of my young friends as chose to hear. On which the Sheik was so good as to propose to provide for me, as it were, a special opportunity, which I now use. We jointly explain to



How to Talk

21

the older boys and girls, who rate between the ages of thirteen and nineteen, that these essays are exclusively for them.

I had once the honor — on the day after Lee's surrender — to address the girls of the 12th Street School in New York. "Shall I call you 'girls' or 'young ladies'?" said I. "Call us girls, call us girls," was the unanimous answer. I heard it with great pleasure; for I took it as a nearly certain sign that these three hundred young people were growing up to be true women, — which is to say, ladies of the very highest tone.

"Why did I think so?" Because at the age of fifteen, sixteen, and seventeen they took pleasure in calling things by their right names.

So far, then, I trust we understand each other, before any one begins to read these little hints of mine, drawn from forty-five years of very quiet listening to good talkers; which are, however, nothing more than hints —

HOW TO TALK.

Here is a letter from my nephew Tom, a spirited, modest boy of seventeen, who is a student of the Scientific School at New Limerick. He is at home with his mother for an eight weeks' vacation; and the very first evening of his return he went round with her to the Vandermeyers', where was a little gathering of some thirty or forty people, — most of them, as he confesses, his old schoolmates, a few of them older than himself. But poor Tom

was mortified, and thinks he was disgraced, because he did not have anything to say, could not say it if he had, and, in short, because he does not talk well. He hates talking parties, he says, and never means to go to one again.

Here is also a letter from Esther W., who may speak for herself, and the two may well enough be put upon the same file, and be answered together: —

“ Please listen patiently to a confession. I have what seems to me very natural, — a strong desire to be liked by those whom I meet around me in society of my own age; but, unfortunately, when with them my manners have often been unnatural and constrained, and I have found myself thinking of myself, and what others were thinking of me, instead of entering into the enjoyment of the moment as others did. I seem to have naturally very little independence, and to be very much afraid of other people, and of their opinion. And when, as you might naturally infer from the above, I often have not been successful in gaining the favor of those around me, then I have spent a great deal of time in the selfish indulgence of ‘the blues,’ and in philosophizing on the why and the wherefore of some persons’ agreeableness and popularity and others’ unpopularity.”

There, is not that a good letter from a nice girl?

Will you please to see, dear Tom, and you also, dear Esther, that both of you, after the fashion of your age, are confounding the method with the thing. You see how charmingly Mrs. Pallas sits back and goes on with her crochet while Dr.



How to Talk

23

Volta talks to her; and then, at the right moment, she says just the right thing, and makes him laugh, or makes him cry, or makes him defend himself, or makes him explain himself; and you think that there is a particular knack or rule for doing this so glibly, or that she has a particular genius for it which you are not born to, and therefore you both propose hermitages for yourselves because you cannot do as she does. Dear children, it would be a very stupid world if anybody in it did just as anybody else does. There is no particular method about talking or talking well. It is one of the things in life which "does itself." And the only reason why you do not talk as easily and quite as pleasantly as Mrs. Pallas is, that you are thinking of the method, and coming to me to inquire how to do that which ought to do itself perfectly, simply, and without any rules at all.

It is just as foolish girls at school think that there is some particular method of drawing with which they shall succeed, while with all other methods they have failed. "No, I can't draw in india-ink [pronounced in-jink], 'n' I can't do anything with crayons, — I hate crayons, — 'n' I can't draw pencil-drawings, 'n' I won't try any more; but if this tiresome old Mr. Apelles was not so obstinate, 'n' would only let me try the 'monochromatic drawing,' I know I could do that. 'T so easy. Julia Ann, she drew a beautiful piece in only six lessons."

My poor Pauline, if you cannot see right when

you have a crayon in your hand, and will not draw what you see then, no "monochromatic system" is going to help you. But if you will put down on the paper what you see, as you see it, whether you do it with a cat's tail, as Benjamin West did it, or with a glove turned inside out, as Mr. Hunt bids you do it, you will draw well. The method is of no use, unless the thing is there; and when you have the thing, the method will follow.

So there is no particular method for talking which will not also apply to swimming or skating, or reading or dancing, or in general to living. And if you fail in talking, it is because you have not yet applied in talking the simple master-rules of life.

For instance, the first of these rules is, —

TELL THE TRUTH.

Only last night I saw poor Bob Edmeston, who has got to pull through a deal of drift-wood before he gets into clear water, break down completely in the very beginning of his acquaintance with one of the nicest girls I know, because he would not tell the truth, or did not. I was standing right behind them, listening to Dr. Ollapod, who was explaining to me the history of the second land-grant made to Gorges, and between the sentences I had a chance to hear every word poor Bob said to Laura. Mark now, Laura is a nice, clever girl, who has come to make the Watsons a visit through her whole vacation at Poughkeepsie; and all the young people are delighted with her



How to Talk

25

pleasant ways, and all of them would be glad to know more of her than they do. Bob really wants to know her, and he was really glad to be introduced to her. Mrs. Pollexfen presented him to her, and he asked her to dance, and they stood on the side of the cotillon behind me and in front of Dr. Ollapod. After they had taken their places, Bob said: "Jew go to the opera last week, Miss Walter?" He meant, "Did you go to the opera last week?"

"No," said Laura, "I did not."

"Oh, 't was charming!" said Bob. And there this effort at talk stopped, as it should have done, being founded on nothing but a lie; which is to say, not founded at all. For, in fact, Bob did not care two straws about the opera. He had never been to it but once, and then he was tired before it was over. But he pretended he cared for it. He thought that at an evening party he must talk about the opera, and the lecture season, and the assemblies, and a lot of other trash, about which in fact he cared nothing, and so knew nothing. Not caring and not knowing, he could not carry on his conversation a step. The mere fact that Miss Walter had shown that she was in real sympathy with him in an indifference to the opera threw him off the track which he never should have been on, and brought his untimely conversation to an end.

Now, as it happened, Laura's next partner brought her to the very same place, or rather she

never left it, but Will Hackmatack came and claimed her dance as soon as Bob's was done. Dr. Ollapod had only got down to the appeal made to the Lords sitting in Equity, when I noticed Will's beginning. He spoke right out of the thing he was thinking of.

"I saw you riding this afternoon," he said.

"Yes," said Laura, "we went out by the red mills, and drove up the hill by Mr. Pond's."

"Did you?" said Will, eagerly. "Did you see the beehives?"

"Beehives? no, — are there beehives?"

"Why, yes, did not you know that Mr. Pond knows more about bees than all the world beside? At least, I believe so. He has a gold medal from Paris for his honey or for something. And his arrangements there are very curious."

"I wish I had known it," said Laura. "I kept bees last summer, and they always puzzled me. I tried to get books; but the books were all written for Switzerland, or England, or anywhere but Orange County."

"Well," said the eager Will, "I do not think Mr. Pond has written any book, but I really guess he knows a great deal about it. Why, he told me —" &c., &c., &c.

It was hard for Will to keep the run of the dance; and before it was over he had promised to ask Mr. Pond when a party of them might come up to the hill and see the establishment; and he felt as well acquainted with Laura as if he had



How to Talk

27

known her a month. All this ease came from Will's not pretending an interest where he did not feel any, but opening simply where he was sure of his ground, and was really interested. More simply, Will did not tell a lie, as poor Bob had done in that remark about the opera, but told the truth.

If I were permitted to write more than thirty-five pages of this note-paper (of which this is the nineteenth), I would tell you twenty stories to the same point. And please observe that the distinction between the two systems of talk is the eternal distinction between the people whom Thackeray calls snobs and the people who are gentlemen and ladies. Gentlemen and ladies are sure of their ground. They pretend to nothing that they are not. They have no occasion to act one or another part. It is not possible for them, even in the *choice of subjects*, to tell lies.

The principle of selecting a subject which thoroughly interests you requires only one qualification. You may be very intensely interested in some affairs of your own; but in general society you have no right to talk of them, simply because they are not of equal interest to other people. Of course you may come to me for advice, or go to your master, or to your father or mother, or to any friend, and in form lay open your own troubles or your own life, and make these the subject of your talk. But in general society you have no right to do this. For the rule of life is, that men and women must not think of themselves, but of

others; they must live for others, and then they will live rightly for themselves. So the second rule for talk would express itself thus:—

DO NOT TALK ABOUT YOUR OWN AFFAIRS.

I remember how I was mortified last summer, up at the Tiptop House, though I was not in the least to blame, by a display Emma Fortinbras made of herself. There had gathered round the fire in the sitting-room quite a group of the different parties who had come up from the different houses, and we all felt warm and comfortable and social; and, to my real delight, Emma and her father and her cousin came in,—they had been belated somewhere. She was a sweet pretty little thing, really the belle of the village, if we had such things, and we are all quite proud of her in one way; but I am sorry to say that she is a little goose, and sometimes she manages to show this just when you don't want her to. Of course she shows this, as all other geese show themselves, by cackling about things that interest no one but herself. When she came into the room, Alice ran to her and kissed her, and took her to the warmest seat, and took her little cold hands to rub them, and began to ask her how it had all happened, and where they had been, and all the other questions. Now, you see, this was a very dangerous position. Poor Emma was not equal to it. The subject was given her, and so far she was not to blame. But when, from the misfortunes of the party, she rushed



How to Talk

29

immediately to detail individual misfortunes of her own, resting principally on the history of a pair of boots which she had thought would be strong enough to last all through the expedition, and which she had meant to send to Sparhawk's before she left home to have their heels cut down, only she had forgotten, and now these boots were thus and thus, and so and so, and *she* had no others with her, and *she* was sure that *she* did not know what *she* should do when *she* got up in the morning, — I say when she got as far as this, in all this thrusting upon people who wanted to sympathize, a set of matters which had no connection with what interested them, excepting so far as their personal interest in her gave it, she violated the central rule of life; for she showed she was thinking of herself with more interest than she thought of others with. Now to do this is bad living, and it is bad living which will show itself in bad talking.

But I hope you see the distinction. If Mr. Agassiz comes to you on the field-day of the Essex Society, and says: "Miss Fanchon, I understand that you fell over from the steamer as you came from Portland, and had to swim half an hour before the boat reached you. Will you be kind enough to tell me how you were taught to swim, and how the chill of the water affected you, and, in short, all about your experience?" he then makes a choice of the subject. He asks for all the detail. It is to gratify him that you go into

the detail, and you may therefore go into it just as far as you choose. Only take care not to lug in one little detail merely because it interests you, when there is no possibility that, in itself, it can have an interest for him.

Have you never noticed how the really provoking silence of these brave men who come back from the war gives a new and particular zest to what they tell us of their adventures? We have to worm it out of them, we drag it from them by pincers, and, when we have it, the flavor is all pure. It is exactly what we want,—life highly condensed; and they could have given us indeed nothing more precious, as certainly nothing more charming. But when some Bobadil braggart volunteers to tell how *he* did this and that, how *he* silenced this battery, and how *he* rode over that field of carnage, in the first place we do not believe a tenth part of his story, and in the second place we wish he would not tell the fraction which we suppose is possibly true.

Life is given to us that we may learn how to live. That is what it is for. We are here in a great boarding-school, where we are being trained in the use of our bodies and our minds, so that in another world we may know how to use other bodies and minds with other faculties. Or, if you please, life is a gymnasium. Take which figure you choose. Because of this, good talk, following the principle of life, is always directed with a general desire for learning rather than teaching. No



How to Talk

31

good talker is obtrusive, thrusting forward his observation on men and things. He is rather receptive, trying to get at other people's observations; and what he says himself falls from him, as it were, by accident, he unconscious that he is saying anything that is worth while. As the late Professor Harris said, one of the last times I saw him, "There are unsounded depths in a man's nature of which he himself knows nothing till they are revealed to him by the plash and ripple of his own conversation with other men." This great principle of life, when applied in conversation, may be stated simply, then, in two words, —

CONFESS IGNORANCE.

You are both so young that you cannot yet conceive of the amount of treasure that will yet be poured in upon you, by all sorts of people, if you do not go about professing that you have all you want already. You know the story of the two school-girls on the Central Railroad. They were dead faint with hunger, having ridden all day without food, but, on consulting together, agreed that they did not dare to get out at any station to buy. A modest old doctor of divinity, who was coming home from a meeting of the "American Board," overheard their talk, got some sponge-cake, and pleasantly and civilly offered it to them as he might have done to his grandchildren. But poor Sybil, who was nervous and anxious, said, "No, thank you," and so Sarah

thought she must say, "No, thank you," too; and so they were nearly dead when they reached the Delavan House. Now just that same thing happens whenever you pretend, either from pride or from shyness, that you know the thing you do not know. If you go on in that way you will be starved before long, and the coroner's jury will bring in a verdict, "Served you right." I could have brayed a girl, whom I will call Jane Smith last night at Mrs. Pollexfen's party, only I remembered, "Though thou bray a fool in a mortar, his foolishness will not depart from him," and that much the same may be said of fools of the other sex. I could have brayed her, I say, when I saw how she was constantly defrauding herself by cutting off that fine Major Andrew, who was talking to her, or trying to. Really, no instances give you any idea of it. From a silly boarding-school habit, I think, she kept saying "Yes," as if she would be disgraced by acknowledging ignorance. "You know," said he, "what General Taylor said to Santa Anna, when they brought him in?" "Yes," simpered poor Jane, though in fact she did not know, and I do not suppose five people in the world do. But poor Andrew, simple as a soldier, believed her and did not tell the story, but went on alluding to it, and they got at once into helpless confusion. Still, he did not know what the matter was, and before long, when they were speaking of one of the Muhlbach novels, he said, "Did you think of the resemblance between



How to Talk

33

the winding up and 'Redgauntlet'?" "Oh, yes," simpered poor Jane again, though, as it proved, and as she had to explain in two or three minutes, she had never read a word of "Redgauntlet." She had merely said "Yes," and "Yes," and "Yes," not with a distinct notion of fraud, but from an impression that it helps conversation on if you forever assent to what is said. This is an utter mistake: for, as I hope you see by this time, conversation really depends on the acknowledgment of ignorance,—being, indeed, the providential appointment of God for the easy removal of such ignorance.

And here I must stop, lest you both be tired. In my next paper I shall begin again, and teach you (4) to talk to the person you are talking with, and not simper to her or him, while really you are looking all round the room, and thinking of ten other persons; (5) never in any other way to underrate the person you talk with, but to talk your best, whatever that may be; and (6) to be brief,—a point which I shall have to illustrate at great length.

If you like, you may confide to the Letter-Box your experiences on these points, as well as on the three on which we have already been engaged. But, whether you do or do not, I shall give to you the result, not only of my experiences, but of at least 5,872 years of talk—Lyell says many more—since Adam gave names to chattering monkeys.

CHAPTER III

TALK

MAY I presume that all my young friends between this and Seattle have read paper Number Two? First class in geography, where is Seattle? Right. Go up. Have you all read, and inwardly considered, the three rules, "Tell the truth;" "Talk not of yourself;" and "Confess ignorance"? Have you all practised them, in moonlight sleigh-ride by the Red River of the North,—in moonlight stroll on the beach by St. Augustine,—in evening party at Pottsville,—and at the parish sociable in Northfield? Then you are sure of the benefits which will crown your lives if you obey these three precepts; and you will, with unfaltering step, move quickly over the kettle-de-benders of this broken essay, and from the thistle, danger, will pluck the three more flowers which I have promised. I am to teach you, fourth,—

TO TALK TO THE PERSON WHO IS TALKING TO YOU.

This rule is constantly violated by fools and snobs. Now you might as well turn your head away when you shoot at a bird, or look over your shoulder when you have opened a new book,—instead of looking at the bird, or looking at the book,—as lapse into any of the habits of a man



who pretends to talk to one person while he is listening to another, or watching another, or wondering about another. If you really want to hear what Jo Gresham is saying to Alice Faulconbridge, when they are standing next to you in the dance, say so to Will Withers, who is trying to talk with you. You can say pleasantly, "Mr. Withers, I want very much to overhear what Mr. Gresham is saying, and if you will keep still a minute, I think I can." Then Will Withers will know what to do. You will not be preoccupied, and perhaps you may be able to hear something you were not meant to know.

At this you are disgusted. You throw down the book at once, and say you will not read any more. You cannot think why this hateful man supposes that you would do anything so mean.

Then why do you let Will Withers suppose so? All he can tell is what you show him. If you will listen while he speaks, so as to answer intelligently, and will then speak to him as if there was no other persons in the room, he will know fast enough that you are talking to him. But if you just say "yes," and "no," and "indeed," and "certainly," in that flabby, languid way in which some boys and girls I know pretend to talk sometimes, he will think that you are engaged in thinking of somebody else, or something else,—unless, indeed, he supposes that you are not thinking of anything, and that you hardly know what thinking is.

It is just as bad, when you are talking to

another girl, or another girl's mother, if you take to watching her hair, or the way she trimmed her frock, or anything else about her, instead of watching what she is saying as if that were really what you and she are talking for. I could name to you young women who seem to go into society for the purpose of studying the milliner's business. It is a very good business, and a very proper business to study in the right place. I know some very good girls who would be much improved, and whose husbands would be a great deal happier, if they would study it to more purpose than they do. But do not study it while you are talking. No, — not if the Empress Eugénie herself should be talking to you.¹ Suppose, when General Dix has presented you and mamma, the Empress should see you in the crowd afterwards, and should send that stiff-looking old gentleman in a court dress across the room, to ask you to come and talk to her, and should say to you, "Mademoiselle, est-ce que l'on permet aux jeunes filles Américaines se promener à cheval sans cavalier?" Do you look her frankly in the face while she speaks, and when she stops, do you answer her as you would answer Leslie Goldthwaite if you were coming home from berrying. Don't you count those pearls that the Empress has tied round her head, nor think how you can make a necktie like hers out of that old bit of ribbon that you bought in Syracuse. Tell her in as good French or as good English as you

¹ This was written in 1869, and I leave it *in memoriam*.



can muster, what she asks; and if, after you have answered her lead, she plays again, do you play again; and if she plays again, do you play again, — till one or other of you takes the trick. But do you think of nothing else, while the talk goes on, but the subject she has started, and of her; do not think of yourself, but address yourself to the single business of meeting her inquiry as well as you can. Then, if it becomes proper for you to ask her a question, you may. But remember that conversation is what you are there for, — not the study of millinery, or fashion, or jewelry, or politics.

Why, I have known men who, while they were smirking, and smiling, and telling other lies to their partners, were keeping the calendar of the whole room, — knew who was dancing with whom, and who was looking at pictures, and that Brown had sent up to the lady of the house to tell her that supper was served, and that she was just looking for her husband that he might offer Mrs. Grant his arm and take her downstairs. But do you think their partners liked to be treated so? Do you think their partners were worms, who liked to be trampled upon? Do you think they were pachydermatous coleoptera of the dor tribe, who had just fallen from red-oak trees, and did not know that they were trampled upon? You are wholly mistaken. Those partners were of flesh and blood, like you, — of the same blood with you, cousins-german of yours on the Anglo-Saxon

side, — and they felt just as badly as you would feel if anybody talked to you while he was thinking of the other side of the room.

And I know a man who is, it is true, one of the most noble and unselfish of men, but who had made troops of friends long before people had found that out. Long before he had made his present fame, he had found these troops of friends. When he was a green, uncouth, unlicked cub of a boy, like you, Stephen, he had made them. And do you ask how? He had made them by listening with all his might. Whoever sailed down on him at an evening party and engaged him — though it were the most weary of odd old ladies — was sure, while they were together, of her victim. He would look her right in the eye, would take in her every shrug and half-whisper, would enter into all her joys and terrors and hopes, would help her by his sympathy to find out what the trouble was, and, when it was his turn to answer, he would answer like her own son. Do you wonder that all the old ladies loved him? And it was no special court to old ladies. He talked so to school-boys, and to shy people who had just poked their heads out of their shells, and to all the awkward people, and to all the gay and easy people. And so he compelled them, by his magnetism, to talk so to him. That was the way he made his first friends, — and that was the way, I think, that he deserved them.

Did you notice how badly I violated this rule



when Dr. Ollapod talked to me of the Gorges land-grants, at Mrs. Pollexfen's? I got very badly punished, and I deserved what I got, for I had behaved very ill. I ought not to have known what Edmeston said, or what Will Hackmatack said. I ought to have been listening, and learning about the Lords sitting in Equity. Only the next day Dr. Ollapod left town without calling on me, he was so much displeased. And when, the next week, I was lecturing in Naguadavick, and the mayor of the town asked me a very simple question about the titles in the third range, I knew nothing about it and was disgraced. So much for being rude, and not attending to the man who was talking to me.

Now do not tell me that you cannot attend to stupid people, or long-winded people, or vulgar people. You can attend to anybody, if you will remember who he is. How do you suppose that Horace Felltham attends to these old ladies, and these shy boys? Why, he remembers that they are all of the blood-royal. To speak very seriously, he remembers whose children they are,—who is their Father. And that is worth remembering. It is not of much consequence, when you think of that, who made their clothes, or what sort of grammar they speak in. This rule of talk, indeed, leads to our next rule, which, as I said of the others, is as essential in conversation as it is in war, in business, in criticism, or in any other affairs of men. It is based on the principle of rightly

honoring all men. For talk, it may be stated thus: —

NEVER UNDERRATE YOUR INTERLOCUTOR.

In the conceit of early life, talking to a man of thrice my age, and of immense experience, I said, a little too flippantly, "Was it not the King of Würtemberg whose people declined a constitution when he had offered it to them?"

"Yes," said my friend, "the King told me the story himself."

Observe what a rebuke this would have been to me, had I presumed to tell him the fact which he knew ten times as accurately as I. I was just saved from sinking into the earth by having couched my statement in the form of a question. The truth is, that we are all dealing with angels unawares, and we had best make up our minds to that, early in our interviews. One of the first of preachers¹ once laid down the law of preaching thus: "Preach as if you were preaching to arch-angels." This means, "Say the very best thing you know, and never condescend to your audience." And I once heard Mr. William Hunt, who is one of the first artists, say to a class of teachers: "I shall not try to adapt myself to your various lines of teaching. I will tell you the best things I know, and you may make the adaptations." If you will boldly try the experiment of entering, with anybody you have to talk with, on the thing

¹ John Weisa.



Talk

41

which at the moment interests you most, you will find out that other people's hearts are much like your heart, other people's experiences much like yours, and even, my dear Justin, that some other people know as much as you know. In short, never talk down to people; but talk to them from your best thought and your best feeling, without trying for it on the one hand, but without rejecting it on the other.

You will be amazed, every time you try this experiment, to find how often the man or the woman whom you first happen to speak to is the very person who can tell you just what you want to know. My friend Ingham, who is a working minister in a large town, says that when he comes from a house where everything is in a tangle, and all wrong, he knows no way of righting things but by telling the whole story, without the names, in the next house he happens to call at in his afternoon walk. He says that if the Windermers are all in tears because little Polly lost their grandmother's miniature when she was out picking blueberries, and if he tells of their loss at the Ashteroths' where he calls next, it will be sure that the daughter of the gardener of the Ashteroths will have found the picture of the Windermers. Remember what I have taught you, — that conversation is the providential arrangement for the relief of ignorance. Only, as in all medicine, the patient must admit that he is ill, or he can never be cured. It is only in "Patronage," — which I am so sorry you boys

and girls will not read,—and in other poorer novels, that the leech cures, at a distance, patients who say they need no physician. Find out your ignorance, first; admit it frankly, second; be ready to recognize with true honor the next man you meet, third; and then, presto! —although it were needed that the floor of the parlor should open, and a little black-bearded Merlin be shot up like Jack in a box, as you saw in Humpty-Dumpty, — the right person, who knows the right thing, will appear, and your ignorance will be solved.

What happened to me last week when I was trying to find the history of Yankee Doodle? Did it come to me without my asking? Not a bit of it. Nothing that was true came without my asking. Without my asking, there came that stuff you saw in the newspapers, which said Yankee Doodle was a Spanish air. That was not true. This was the way I found out what was true. I confessed my ignorance; and, as Lewis at Bel-lombre said of that ill-mannered Power, I had a great deal to confess. What I knew was, that in "American Anecdotes" an anonymous writer said a friend of his had seen the air among some Roundhead songs in the collection of a friend of his at Cheltenham, and that this air was the basis of Yankee Doodle. What was more, there was the old air printed. But then that story was good for nothing till you could prove it. A Methodist minister came to Jeremiah Mason, and said, "I have seen an angel from heaven who told me that



your client was innocent." "Yes," said Mr. Mason, "and did he tell you how to prove it?" Unfortunately, in the dear old "American Anecdotes," there was not the name of any person, from one cover to the other, who would be responsible for one syllable of its charming stories. So there I was! And I went through library after library looking for that Roundhead song, and I could not find it. But when the time came that it was necessary I should know, I confessed ignorance. Well, after that, the first man I spoke to said, "No, I don't know anything about it. It is not in my line. But our old friend Watson knew something about it, or said he did." "Who is Watson?" said I. "Oh, he's dead ten years ago. But there's a letter by him in the 'Historical Proceedings,' which tells what he knew." So, indeed, there was a letter by Watson. Oddly enough, it left out all that was of direct importance; but it left in this statement, that he, an authentic person, wrote the dear old "American Anecdote" story. That was something. So then I gratefully confessed ignorance again, and again, and again. And I have many friends, so that there were many brave men, and many fair women, who were extending the various tentacula of their feeling processes into the different realms of the known and the unknown, to find that lost scrap of a Roundhead song for me. And so, at last, it was a girl — as old, say, as the youngest who will struggle as far as this page in the Cleveland High School — who said, "Why,

there is something about it in that funny English book, 'Gleanings for the Curious,' I found in the Boston Library." And sure enough, in an article perfectly worthless in itself, there were the two words which named the printed collection of music which the other people had forgotten to name. These three books were each useless alone; but, when brought together, they established a fact. It took three people in talk to bring the three books together. And if I had been such a fool that I could not confess ignorance, or such another fool as to have distrusted the people I met with, I should never have had the pleasure of my discovery.

Now I must not go into any more such stories as this, because you will say I am violating the sixth great rule of talk, which is —

BE SHORT.

And, besides, you must know that "they say" (whoever *they* may be) that "young folks" like you skip such explanations, and hurry on to the stories. I do not believe a word of that, but I obey.

I know one saint. We will call her Agatha. I used to think she could be painted for Mary Mother, her face is so passionless and pure and good. I used to want to make her wrap a blue cloth round her head, as if she were in a picture I have a print of, and then, if we could only find the painter who was as pure and good as she, she should be painted as Mary Mother. Well, this



sweet saint has done lovely things in life, and will do more, till she dies. And the people she deals with do many more than she. For her truth and gentleness and loveliness pass into them, and inspire them, and then, with the light and life they gain from her, they can do what, with her light and life, she cannot do. For she herself, like all of us, has her limitations. And I suppose the one reason why, with such serenity and energy and long-suffering and unselfishness as hers, she does not succeed better in her own person is that she does not know how to "be short." We cannot all be or do all things. First boy in Latin, you may translate that sentence back into Latin, and see how much better it sounds there than in English. Then send your version to the Letter-Box.

For instance, it may be Agatha's duty to come and tell me that—what shall we have it?—say that dinner is ready. Now really the best way but one to say that is, "Dinner is ready, sir." The best way is, "Dinner, sir;" for this age, observe, loves to omit the verb. Let it. But really if St. Agatha, of whom I speak,—the second of that name, and of the Protestant, not the Roman Canon,—had this to say, she would say: "I am so glad to see you! I do not want to take your time, I am sure, you have so many things to do, and you are so good to everybody, but I knew you would let me tell you this. I was coming upstairs, and I saw your cook, Florence, you know. I always knew her; she used to live at Mrs. Cra-

dock's before she started on her journey; and her sister lived with that friend of mine that I visited the summer Willie was so sick with the mumps, and she was so kind to him. She was a beautiful woman; her husband would be away all the day, and when he came home, she would have a piece of mince-pie for him, and his slippers warmed and in front of the fire for him; and, when he was in Cayenne, he died, and they brought his body home in a ship Frederic Marsters was the captain of. It was there that I met Florence's sister — not so pretty as Florence, but I think a nice girl. She is married now and lives at Ashland, and has two nice children, a boy and a girl. They are all coming to see us at Thanksgiving. I was so glad to see that Florence was with you, and I did not know it when I came in, and when I met her in the entry I was very much surprised, and she saw I was coming in here, and she said, ' Please, will you tell him that dinner is ready? ' "

Now it is not simply, you see, that, while an announcement of that nature goes on, the mutton grows cold, your wife grows tired, the children grow cross, and that the subjugation of the world in general is set back, so far as you are all concerned, a perceptible space of time on The Great Dial. But the tale itself has a wearing and wearying perplexity about it. At the end you doubt if it is your dinner that is ready, or Fred Marster's, or Florence's, or nobody's. Whether there is any real dinner, you doubt. For want of a vigorous



nominate case, firmly governing the verb, whether that verb is seen or not, or because this firm nominative is masked and disguised behind clouds of drapery and other rubbish, the best of stories, thus told, loses all life, interest, and power.

Leave out, then, resolutely. First, omit "Speaking of hides," or "That reminds me of," or "What you say suggests," or "You make me think of," or any such introductions. Of course you remember what you are saying. You could not say it if you did not remember it. It is to be hoped, too, that you are thinking of what you are saying. If you are not, you will not help the matter by saying you are, no matter if the conversation do have firm and sharp edges. Conversation is not an essay. It has a right to many large letters, and many new paragraphs. That is what makes it so much more interesting than long, close paragraphs like this, which the printers hate as much as I do, and which they call *solid matter*, as if to indicate that, in proportion, such paragraphs are apt to lack the light, ethereal spirit of all life.

Second, in conversation, you need not give authorities, if it be only clear that you are not pretending originality. Do not say, as dear Pemberton used to, "I have a book at home, which I bought at the sale of Byles's books, in which there is an account of Parry's first voyage, and an explanation of the red snow, which shows that the red snow is," &c., &c., &c. Instead of this say, "Red snow is," &c., &c., &c. Nobody will think you are

producing this as a discovery of your own. When the authority is asked for, there will be a fit time for you to tell.

Third, never explain, unless for extreme necessity, who people are. Let them come in as they do at the play, when you have no play-bill. If what you say is otherwise intelligible, the hearers will find out, *if it is necessary*, as perhaps it may not be. Go back, if you please, to my account of Agatha, and see how much sooner we should all have come to dinner if she had not tried to explain about all these people. The truth is, you cannot explain about them. You are led in farther and farther. Frank wants to say, "George went to the Stereopticon yesterday." Instead of that he says, "A fellow at our school named George, a brother of Tom Tileston who goes to the Dwight, and is in Miss Somerby's room,—not the Miss Somerby that has the class in the Sunday-school,—she's at the Brimmer School,—but her sister,"—and already poor Frank is far from George, and far from the Stereopticon, and, as I observe, is wandering farther and farther. He began with George, but, George having suggested Tom and Miss Somerby, by the same law of thought each of them would have suggested two others. Poor Frank, who was quite master of his one theme, George, finds unawares that he is dealing with two, gets flurried, but plunges on, only to find, in his remembering, that these two have doubled into four, and then, conscious that in an instant they



will be eight, and, which is worse, eight themes or subjects on which he is not prepared to speak at all, probably wishes he had never begun. It is certain that every one else wishes it, whether he does or not. You need not explain. People of sense understand something.

Do you remember the illustration of repartee in Miss Edgeworth? It is this: —

Mr. Pope, who was crooked and cross, was talking with a young officer. The officer said he thought that in a certain sentence an interrogation-mark was needed.

“Do you know what an interrogation mark is?” snarled out the crooked, cross little man.

“It is a crooked little thing that asks questions,” said the young man.

And he shut up Mr. Pope for that day.

But you can see that he would not have shut up Mr. Pope at all if he had had to introduce his answer and explain it from point to point. If he had said, “Do you really suppose I do not know? Why, really, as long ago as when I was at the Charter House School, old William Watrous, who was master there then, — he had been at the school himself, when he and Ezekiel Cheever were boys, — told me that a point of interrogation was a little crooked thing that asks questions.”

The repartee would have lost a good deal of its force, if this unknown young officer had not learned (1) not to introduce his remarks; (2) not to give authorities; and (3) not to explain who people

are. These are, perhaps, enough instances in detail, though they do not in the least describe all the dangers that surround you. Speaking more generally, avoid parentheses as you would poison ; and more generally yet, as I said at first, BE SHORT.

These six rules must suffice for the present. Observe, I am only speaking of methods. I take it for granted that you are not spiteful, hateful, or wicked otherwise. I do not tell you, therefore, never to talk scandal, because I hope you do not need to learn that. I do not tell you never to be sly, or mean, in talk. If you need to be told that, you are beyond such training as we can give here. Study well, and practise daily these six rules, and then you will be prepared for our next instructions, — which require attention to these rules, as all Life does, — when we shall consider—

HOW TO WRITE.

CHAPTER IV

HOW TO WRITE

IT is supposed that you have learned your letters, and how to make them. It is supposed that you have written the school copies, from

Apes and Amazons aim at Art.

down to

Zanies and Zodiacs are the Zest of Zoroaster.



How to Write

51

It is supposed that you can mind your p's and q's, and, as Harriet Byron said of Charles Grandison, in the romance which your great-grandmother knew by heart, "that you can spell well." Observe the advance of the times, dear Stephen. That a gentleman should spell well was the only literary requisition which the accomplished lady of his love made upon him a hundred years ago.¹ And you, if you go to Mrs. Vandermeier's party to-night, will be asked by the fair Marcia what is your opinion as to the origin of the myth of Ceres!

These things are supposed. It is also supposed that you have, at heart and in practice, the essential rules which have been unfolded in Chapters II. and III. As has been already said, these are as necessary in one duty of life as in another, — in writing a President's message as in finding your way by a spotted trail from Albany to Tamworth.

These things being supposed, we will now consider the special needs for writing, as a gentleman writes, or a lady, in the English language, which is, fortunately for us, the best language of them all.

I will tell you, first, the first lesson I learned about it; for it was the best, and was central. My first undertaking of importance in this line was made when I was seven years old. There was a new theatre, and a prize of a hundred dollars was offered for an ode to be recited at the opening, —

¹ It was a hundred then. We have changed all that. 1899.

or perhaps it was only at the opening of the season. Our school was hard by the theatre, and as we boys were generally short of spending-money, we conceived the idea of competing for this prize. You can see that a hundred dollars would have gone a good way in barley-candy and blood-alleys,—which last are things unknown, perhaps to Young America to-day. So we resolutely addressed ourselves to writing for the ode. I was soon snagged, and found the difficulties greater than I had thought. I consulted one who has through life been Nestor and Mentor to me,—(Second class in Greek,—Wilkins, who was Nestor? — Right; go up. Third class in French,—Miss Clara, who was Mentor? — Right; sit down),—and he replied by this remark, which I beg you to ponder inwardly, and always act upon:—

“Edward,” said he, “whenever I am going to write anything, I find it best to think first what I am going to say.”

In the instruction thus conveyed is a lesson which nine writers out of ten have never learned. Even the people who write leading articles for the newspapers do not, half the time, know what they are going to say when they begin. And I have heard many a sermon which was evidently written by a man who, when he began, only knew what his first “head” was to be. The sermon was a sort of riddle to himself when he started, and he was curious as to how it would come out. I remember a very worthy gentleman who sometimes



spoke to the Sunday-school when I was a boy. He would begin without the slightest idea of what he was going to say, but he was sure that the end of the first sentence would help him to the second. This is an example :—

“My dear young friends, I do not know that I have anything to say to you, but I am very much obliged to your teachers for asking me to address you this beautiful morning. — The morning is so beautiful, after the refreshment of the night, that as I walked to church, and looked around and breathed the fresh air, I felt more than ever what a privilege it is to live in so wonderful a world. — For the world, dear children, has been all contrived and set in order for us by a Power so much higher than our own, that we might enjoy our own lives, and live for the happiness and good of our brothers and our sisters. — Our brothers and our sisters they are indeed, though some of them are in distant lands, and beneath other skies, and parted from us by the broad oceans. — These oceans, indeed, do not so much divide the world as they unite it. They make it one. The winds which blow over them, and the currents which move their waters, — all are ruled by a higher law, that they may contribute to commerce and to the good of man. — And man, my dear children,” &c., &c., &c.

You see there is no end to it. It is a sort of capping verses with yourself, where you take up the last word, or the last idea of one sentence, and begin the next with it, quite indifferent where you

come out, if you only "occupy the time" that is appointed. It is very easy for you, but, my dear friends, it is very hard for those who read and who listen !

The vice goes so far, indeed, that you may divide literature into two great classes of books. The smaller class of the two consists of the books written by people who had something to say. They had in life learned something, or seen something, or done something, which they really wanted and needed to tell to other people. They told it. And their writings make, perhaps, a twentieth part of the printed literature of the world. It is the part which contains all that is worth reading. The other nineteen twentieths make up the other class. The people have written just as you wrote at school when Miss Winstanley told you to bring in your compositions on "Duty Performed." You had very little to say about "Duty Performed." But Miss Winstanley expected three pages. And she got them,—such as they were.

Our first rule is, then,—

KNOW WHAT YOU WANT TO SAY.

The second rule is,—

SAY IT.

That is, do not begin by saying something else, which you think will lead up to what you want to say. I remember, when they tried to teach me to sing, they told me to "think of eight and sing seven." That may be a very good rule for singing,



How to Write

55

but it is not a good rule for talking, or writing, or any of the other things that I have to do. I advise you to say the thing you want to say. When I began to preach, another of my Nestors said to me, "Edward, I give you one piece of advice. When you have written your sermon, leave off the introduction and leave off the conclusion. The introduction seems to me always written to show that the minister can preach two sermons on one text. Leave that off, then, and it will do for another Sunday. The conclusion is written to apply to the congregation the doctrine of the sermon. But, if your hearers are such fools that they cannot apply the doctrine to themselves, nothing you can say will help them." In this advice was much wisdom. It consists, you see, in advising to begin at the beginning, and to stop when you have done.

Thirdly, and always, —

USE YOUR OWN LANGUAGE.

I mean the language you are accustomed to use in daily life. David did much better with his sling than he would have done with Saul's sword and spear. And Hatty Fielding told me, only last week, that she was very sorry she wore her cousin's pretty brooch to an evening dance, though Fanny had really forced it on her. Hatty said, like a sensible girl as she is, that it made her nervous all the time. She felt as if she were sailing under false colors. If your every-day language is not fit for a letter or for print, it is not fit for talk. And

if, by any series of joking or fun, at school or at home, you have got into the habit of using slang in talk, which is not fit for print, why, the sooner you get out of it the better. Remember that the very highest compliment paid to anything printed is paid when a person, hearing it read aloud, thinks it is the remark of the reader made in conversation. Both writer and reader then receive the highest possible praise.

It is sad enough to see how often this rule is violated. There are fashions of writing. Mr. Dickens, in his wonderful use of exaggerated language, introduced one. And now you can hardly read the court report in a village paper but you find that the ill-bred boy who makes up what he calls its "locals" thinks it is funny to write in such a style as this: —

"An unfortunate individual who answered to the somewhat well-worn sobriquet of Jones, and appeared to have been trying some experiments as to the comparative density of his own skull and the materials of the sidewalk, made an involuntary appearance before Mr. Justice Smith."

Now the little fool who writes this does not think of imitating Dickens. He is only imitating another fool, who was imitating another, who was imitating another, — who, through a score of such imitations, got the idea of this burlesque exaggeration from some of Mr. Dickens's earlier writings of thirty years ago. It was very funny when Mr. Dickens originated it. And almost always, when



How to Write

57

he used it, it was very funny. But it is not in the least funny when these other people use it, to whom it is not natural, and to whom it does not come easily. Just as this boy says "sobriquet," without knowing at all what the word means, merely because he has read it in another newspaper, everybody, in this vein, gets entrapped into using words with the wrong senses, in the wrong places, and making himself ridiculous.

Now it happens, by good luck, that I have, on the table here, a pretty file of eleven compositions, which Miss Winstanley has sent me, which the girls in her first class wrote, on the subject I have already named. The whole subject, as she gave it out was, "Duty performed is a Rainbow in the Soul." I think, myself, that the subject was a bad one, and that Miss Winstanley would have done better had she given them a choice from two familiar subjects, of which they had lately seen something or read something. When young people have to do a thing, it always helps them to give them a choice between two ways of doing it. However, Miss Winstanley gave them this subject. It made a good deal of growling in the school, but, when the time came, of course the girls buckled down to the work, and, as I said before, the three pages wrote themselves, or were written somehow or other.

Now I am not going to inflict on you all these eleven compositions. But there are three of them which, as it happens, illustrate quite distinctly the

three errors against which I have been warning you. I will copy a little scrap from each of them. First, here is Pauline's. She wrote without any idea, when she began, of what she was going to say.

"Duty performed is a Rainbow in the Soul.

"A great many people ask the question, 'What is duty?' and there has been a great deal written upon the subject, and many opinions have been expressed in a variety of ways. People have different ideas upon it, and some of them think one thing and some another. And some have very strong views, and very decided about it. But these are not always to be the most admired, for often those who are so loud about a thing are not the ones who know the most upon a subject. Yet it is all very important, and many things should be done; and, when they are done, we are all embowered in ecstasy."

That is enough of poor Pauline's. And, to tell the truth, she was as much ashamed when she had come out to this "ecstasy," in first writing what she called "the plaguy thing," as she is now she reads it from the print. But she began that sentence, just as she began the whole, with no idea how it was to end. Then she got aground. She had said, "it is all very important;" and she did not know that it was better to stop there, if she had nothing else to say, so, after waiting a good while, knowing that they must all go to bed at nine, she added, "and many things should be done." Even then, she did not see that the best thing she could do was to put a full stop to the



sentence. She watched the other girls, who were going well down their second pages, while she had not turned the leaf, and so, in real agony, she added this absurd "when they are done, we are all embowered in ecstasy." The next morning they had to copy the "compositions." She knew what stuff this was, just as well as you and I do, but it took up twenty good lines, and she could not afford, she thought, to leave it out. Indeed, I am sorry to say, none of her "composition" was any better. She did not know what she wanted to say, when she had done, any better than when she began.

Pauline is the same Pauline who wanted to draw in monochromatic drawing.

Here is the beginning of Sybil's. She is the girl who refused the sponge-cake when Dr. Throop offered it to her. She had an idea that an introduction helped along, — and this is her introduction.

"Duty performed is a Rainbow in the Soul.

"I went out at sunset to consider this subject, and beheld how the departing orb was scattering his beams over the mountains. Every blade of grass was gathering in some rays of beauty, every tree was glittering in the majesty of parting day.

"I said, What is life? — What is duty? I saw the world folding itself up to rest. The little flowers, the tired sheep, were turning to their fold. So the sun went down. He had done his duty, along with the rest."

And so we got round to "Duty performed," and, the introduction well over, like the tuning of an orchestra, the business of the piece began. That little slip about the flowers going into their folds was one which Sybil afterwards defended. She said it meant that they folded themselves up. But it was an oversight when she wrote it; she forgot the flowers, and was thinking of the sheep.

Now I think you will all agree with me that the whole composition would have been better without this introduction.

Sarah Clavers had a genuine idea, which she had explained to the other girls much in this way: "I know what Miss Winstanley means. She means this. When you have had a real hard time to do what you know you ought to do, when you have made a good deal of fuss about it, — as we all did the day we had to go over to Mr. Ingham's and beg pardon for disturbing the Sunday-school, — you are so glad it is done that everything seems nice and quiet and peaceful, — just as, when a thunder-storm is really over, only just a few drops falling, there comes a nice still minute or two with a rainbow across the sky. That's what Miss Winstanley means, and that's what I am going to say."

Now really, if Sarah had said that, without making the sentence breathlessly long, it would have been a very decent "composition" for such a subject. But when poor Sarah got her paper



before her, she made two mistakes. First, she thought her school-girl talk was not good enough to be written down. And, second, she knew that long words took up more room than short; so, to fill up her three pages, she translated her little words into the largest she could think of. It was just as Dr. Schweigenthal, when he wanted to say, "Jesus was going to Jerusalem," said, "The Founder of our religion was proceeding to the metropolis of his country." That took three times as much room and time, you see. So Sarah translated her English into the language of the Talkee-talkees; thus: —

"Duty performed is a Rainbow in the Soul."

"It is frequently observed that the complete discharge of the obligations pressing upon us as moral agents is attended with conflict and difficulty. Frequently, therefore, we address ourselves to the discharge of these obligations with some measure of resistance, perhaps with obstinacy, and I may add, indeed, with unwillingness. I wish I could persuade myself that our teacher had forgotten" (Sarah looked on this as a masterpiece, — a good line of print, which says, as you see, really nothing) "the afternoon which was so mortifying to all who were concerned, when her appeal to our better selves, and to our educated consciousness of what was due to a clergyman, and to the institutions of religion, made it necessary for several of the young ladies to cross to the village" (Sarah wished she could have said metropolis) "and obtain an interview with the Rev. Mr. Ingham."

And so the composition goes on. Four full pages there are; but you see how they were gained,—by a vicious style, wholly false to a frank-spoken girl like Sarah. She expanded into what fills sixteen lines here what, as she expressed it in conversation, fills only seven.

I hope you all see how one of these faults brings on another. Such is the way with all faults; they hunt in couples, or often, indeed, in larger company. The moment you leave the simple wish to say upon paper the thing you have thought, you are given over to all these temptations to write things which, if any one else wrote them, you would say were absurd, as you say these school-girls' "compositions" are. Here is a good rule of the real "Nestor" of our time.¹ He is a great preacher; and one day he was speaking of the advantage of sometimes preaching an old sermon a second time. "You can change the arrangement," he said. "You can fill in any point in the argument, where you see it is not as strong as you proposed. You can add an illustration, if your statement is difficult to understand. Above all, you can

"LEAVE OUT ALL THE FINE PASSAGES."

I put that in small capitals, for one of our rules. For, in nineteen cases out of twenty, the Fine Passage that you are so pleased with, when you first write it, is better out of sight than in. Re-

¹ Dr. James Walker.

member Whately's great maxim, "Nobody knows what good things you leave out."

Indeed, to the older of the young friends who favor me by reading these pages I can give no better advice, by the way, than that they read "Whately's Rhetoric." Read ten pages a day, then turn back, and read them carefully again, before you put the book by. You will find it a very pleasant book, and it will give you a great many hints for clear and simple expression, which you are not so likely to find in any other way I know.

Most of you know the difference between Saxon words and Latin words in the English language. You know there were once two languages in England,—the Norman French, which William the Conqueror and his men brought in, and the Saxon of the people who were conquered at that time. The Norman French was largely composed of words of Latin origin. The English language has been made up of the slow mixture of these two; but the real stock, out of which this delicious soup is made, is the Saxon,—the Norman French should only add the flavor. In some writing, it is often necessary to use the words of Latin origin. Thus, in most scientific writing, the Latin words more nicely express the details of the meaning needed. But, to use the Latin word where you have a good Saxon one is still what it was in the times of Wamba and of Cedric,—it is to pretend you are one of the conquering nobility, when,

in fact, you are one of the free people, who speak, and should be proud to speak, not the French, but the English tongue. To those of you who have even a slight knowledge of French or Latin it will be very good fun, and a very good exercise, to translate, in some thoroughly bad author, his Latin words into English.

To younger writers, or to those who know only English, this may seem too hard a task. It will be doing much the same thing, if they will try translating from long words into short ones.

Here is a piece of weak English. It is not bad in other regards, but simply weak.

"Entertaining unlimited confidence in your intelligent and patriotic devotion to the public interest, and being conscious of no motives on my part which are not inseparable from the honor and advancement of my country, I hope it may be my privilege to deserve and secure, not only your cordial co-operation in great public measures, but also those relations of mutual confidence and regard which it is always so desirable to cultivate between members of co-ordinate branches of the government."¹

Take that for an exercise in translating into shorter words. Strike out the unnecessary words, and see if it does not come out stronger. The same passage will serve also as an exercise as to the use of Latin and Saxon words. Dr. Johnson

¹ From Mr. Franklin Pierce's first message to Congress as President of the United States.



How to Write

65

is generally quoted as the English author who uses most Latin words. He uses, I think, ten in a hundred. But our Congressmen far exceed him. This sentence uses Latin words at the rate of thirty-five in a hundred. Try a good many experiments in translating from long to short, and you will be sure that, when you have a fair choice between two words,

A SHORT WORD IS BETTER THAN A LONG ONE.

For instance, I think this sentence would have been better if it had been couched in thirty-six words instead of eighty-one. I think we should have lost nothing of the author's meaning if he had said: "I have full trust in you. I am sure that I seek only the honor and advance of the country. I hope, therefore, that I may earn your respect and regard, while we heartily work together."

I am fond of telling the story of the words which a distinguished friend of mine¹ used in accepting a hard post of duty. He said:—

"I do not think I am fit for this place. But my friends say I am, and I trust them. I shall take the place, and, when I am in it, I shall do as well as I can."

It is a very grand sentence. Observe that it has not one word which is more than one syllable. As it happens, also, every word is Saxon,—there

¹ Rev. Dr. Hosmer, when he accepted the presidency of Antioch College.

is not one spurt of Latin. Yet this was a learned man, who, if he chose, could have said the whole in Latin. But he was one American gentleman talking to another American gentleman, and therefore he chose to use the tongue to which they both were born.

We have not space to go into the theory of these rules, as far as I should like to. But you see the force which a short word has, if you can use it, instead of a long one. If you want to say "hush," "hush" is a much better word than the French "*taisez-vous*." If you want to say "halt," "halt" is much better than the French "*arrêtez-vous*." The French have, in fact, borrowed "*halte*" from us or from the German, for their tactics. For the same reason, you want to prune out the unnecessary words from your sentences, and even the classes of words which seem put in to fill up. If, for instance, you can express your idea without an adjective, your sentence is stronger and more manly. It is better to say "a saint" than "a saintly man." It is better to say "This is the truth" than "This is the truthful result." Of course an adjective may be absolutely necessary. But you may often detect extempore speakers in piling in adjectives, because they have not yet hit on the right noun. In writing, this is not to be excused. "You have all the time there is," when you write, and you do better to sink a minute in thinking for one right word, than to put in two in its place because you can do so



How to Write

67

without loss of time. I hope every school-girl knows, what I am sure every school-boy knows, Sheridan's saying, that "easy writing is hard reading."

In general, as I said before, other things being equal,

"THE FEWER WORDS THE BETTER,"

"as it seems to me." "As it seems to me" is the quiet way in which Nestor states things. Would we were all as careful!

There is one adverb or adjective which it is almost always safe to leave out in America. It is the word "very." I learned that from one of the masters of English style. "Strike out your 'verys,'" said he to me, when I was young. I wish I had done so oftener than I have.

For myself, I like short sentences. This is, perhaps, because I have read a good deal of modern French, and I think the French gain in clearness by the shortness of their sentences. But there are great masters of style, — great enough to handle long sentences well, — and these men would not agree with me. But I will tell you this, that if you have a sentence which you do not like, the best experiment to try on it is the experiment Medea tried on the old goat, when she wanted to make him over: —

CUT IT TO PIECES.

What shall I take for illustration? You will be more interested in one of these school-girls'

themes than in an old Congress speech I have here marked for copying. Here is the first draft of Laura Walter's composition, which happens to be tied up in the same red ribbon with the finished exercises. I will copy a piece of that, and then you shall see, from the corrected "composition," what came of it when she cut it to pieces, and applied the other rules which we have been studying.

LAURA'S FIRST DRAFT.

"Duty performed is a Rainbow in the Soul."

"I cannot conceive, and therefore I cannot attempt adequately to consider, the full probable meaning of the metaphorical expression with which the present 'subject' concludes, — nor do I suppose it is absolutely necessary that I should do so, for expressing the various impressions which I have formed on the subject, taken as a whole, which have occurred to me in such careful meditation as I have been able to give to it, — in natural connection with an affecting little incident, which I will now, so far as my limited space will permit, proceed, however inadequately, to describe.

"My dear little brother Frankie — as sweet a little fellow as ever plagued his sister's life out, or troubled the kindest of mothers in her daily duties — was one day returning from school, when he met my father hurrying from his office, and was directed by him to proceed as quickly as was possible to the post-office, and make inquiry there for a letter of a good deal of importance which he had reason to expect, or at the least to hope for, by the New York mail."



Laura had come as far as this early in the week, when bedtime came. The next day she read it all, and saw it was sad stuff, and she frankly asked herself why. The answer was, that she had really been trying to spin out three pages. "Now," said Laura to herself, "that is not fair." And she finished the piece in a very different way, as you shall see. Then she went back over this introduction, and struck out the fine passages. Then she struck out the long words, and put in short ones. Then she saw she could do better yet, — and she cut that long introductory sentence to pieces. Then she saw that none of it was strictly necessary, if she only explained why she gave up the rainbow part. And, after all these reductions, the first part of the essay which I have copied was cut down and changed so that it read thus : —

"Duty performed is a Rainbow in the Soul."

"I do not know what is meant by a Rainbow in the Soul."

Then Laura went on thus : —

"I will try to tell a story of duty performed. My brother Frank was sent to the post-office for a letter. When he came there, the poor child found a big dog at the door of the office, and was afraid to go in. It was just the dead part of the day in a country village, when even the shops are locked up for an hour, and Frank, who is very shy, saw no one whom he could call upon. He tried to make Miss Evarts, the post-office clerk, hear ; but she was in the back of the office. Frank was fright-

ened, but he meant to do his duty. So he crossed the bridge, walked up to the butcher's shop in the other village, — which he knew was open, — spent two pennies for a bit of meat, and carried it back to tempt his enemy. He waved it in the air, called the dog, and threw it into the street. The dog was much more willing to eat the meat than to eat Frankie. He left his post. Frank went in and tapped on the glass, and Miss Evarts came and gave him the letter. Frank came home in triumph, and papa said it was a finer piece of duty performed than the celebrated sacrifice of Casabianca's would have been, had it happened that Casabianca ever made it."

That is the shortest of these "compositions." It is much the best. Miss Winstanley took the occasion to tell the girls that, other things being equal, a short "composition" is better than a long one. A short "composition" which shows thought and care is much better than a long one which "writes itself."

I dislike the word "composition," but I use it, because it is familiar. I think "essay" or "piece" or even "theme" a better word.

Will you go over Laura's story and see where it could be shortened, and what Latin words could be changed for better Saxon ones?

Will you take care, in writing yourself, never to say "commence" or "presume"?

In the next chapter we will ask each other

HOW TO READ.



How to Read

71

CHAPTER V

HOW TO READ

I. — *The Choice of Books*

YOU are not to expect any stories this time. There will be very few words about Stephen, or Sybil, or Sarah. My business now is rather to answer, as well as I can, such questions as young people ask who are beginning to have their time at their own command, and can make their own selection of the books they are to read. I have before me, as I write, a handful of letters which have been written to the office of *The Young Folks*, asking such questions. And all my intelligent young friends are asking each other such questions, and so ask them of me every day. I shall answer these questions by laying down some general rules, just as I have done before, but I shall try to put you into the way of choosing your own books, rather than choosing for you a long, defined list of them.

I believe very thoroughly in courses of reading, because I believe in having one book lead to another. But, after the beginning, these courses for different persons will vary very much from each other. You all go out to a great picnic, and meet together in some pleasant place in the woods, and you put down the baskets there, and leave the

pail with the ice in the shadiest place you can find, and cover it up with the blanket. Then you all set out in this great forest, which we call Literature. But it is only a few of the party who choose to start hand in hand along a gravel-path there is, which leads straight to the Burgesses' well, and probably those few enjoy less and gain less from the day's excursion than any of the rest. The rest break up into different knots, and go some here and some there, as their occasion and their genius call them. Some go after flowers, some after berries, some after butterflies; some knock the rocks to pieces, some get up where there is a fine view, some sit down and copy the stumps, some go into water, some make a fire, some find a camp of Indians and learn how to make baskets. Then they all come back to the picnic in good spirits and with good appetites, each eager to tell the others what he has seen and heard, each having satisfied his own taste and genius, and each and all having made vastly more out of the day than if they had all held to the gravel-path and walked in column to the Burgesses' well and back again.

This, you see, is a long parable for the purpose of making you remember that there are but few books which it is necessary for every intelligent boy and girl, man and woman to have read. Of those few, I had as lief give the list here.

First is the Bible, of which not only is an intelligent knowledge necessary for your healthy growth



How to Read

73

in religious life, but, — which is of less consequence, indeed — it is as necessary for your tolerable understanding of the literature, or even science, of a world which for eighteen centuries has been under the steady influence of the Bible. Around the English version of it, as Mr. Marsh¹ shows so well, the English language of the last three centuries has revolved, as the earth revolves around the sun. He means that, although the language of one time differs from that of another, it is always at about the same distance from the language of King James's Bible.

Second, every one ought to be quite well informed as to the history of the country in which he lives. All of you should know the general history of the United States well. You should know the history of your own State in more detail, and of your own town in the most detail of all.

Third, an American needs to have a clear knowledge of the general features of the history of England.

Now it does not make so much difference how you compass this general historical knowledge, if, in its main features, you do compass it. When Mr. Lincoln went down to Norfolk to see the rebel commissioners, Mr. Hunter, on their side, cited, as a precedent for the action which he wanted the President to pursue, the negotiations between Charles the First and his Parliament. Mr. Lin-

¹ Marsh's Lectures on the English Language; very entertaining books.

coln's eyes twinkled, and he said: "Upon questions of history I must refer you to Mr. Seward, for he is posted upon such things, and I do not profess to be. My only distinct recollection of the matter is, that Charles lost his head." Now you see it is of no sort of consequence how Mr. Lincoln got his thoroughly sound knowledge of the history of England, — in which, by the way, he was entirely at home, — and he had a perfect right to pay the compliment he did to Mr. Seward. But it was of great importance to him that he should not be haunted with the fear that the other man did know, really, of some important piece of negotiation of which he was ignorant. It was important to him to know that, so that he might be sure that his joke was — as it was — exactly the fitting answer.

Fourth, it is necessary that every intelligent American or Englishman should have read carefully most of Shakespeare's plays. Most people would have named them before the history, but I do not. I do not care, however, how early you read them in life, and, as we shall see, they will be among your best guides for the history of England.

Lastly, it is a disgrace to read even the newspaper without knowing where the places are which are spoken of. You need, therefore, the very best atlas you can provide yourself with. The atlas you had when you studied geography at school is better than none. But if you can compass any more precise and full, so much the



better. Colton's American Atlas is good. The large cheap maps, published two on one roller by Lloyd, are good; if you can give but five dollars for your maps, perhaps this is the best investment. Mr. Fay's beautiful atlas costs but three and a half dollars. For the other hemisphere, Black's Atlas is good. Rogers's, published in Edinburgh, is very complete in its American maps. Stieler's is cheap and reliable.

When people talk of the "books which no gentleman's library should be without," the list may be boiled down, I think—if in any stress we should be reduced to the bread-and-water diet—to such books as will cover these five fundamental necessities. If you cannot buy the Bible, the agent of the County Bible Society will give you one. You can buy the whole of Shakespeare for fifty cents in Dicks's edition. And, within two miles of the place where you live, there are books enough for all the historical study I have prescribed. So, in what I now go on to say, I shall take it for granted that we have all of us made thus much preparation, or can make it. These are the central stores of the picnic, which we can fall back upon, after our explorations in our various lines of literature.

Now for our several courses of reading. How am I to know what are your several tastes, or the several lines of your genius? Here are, as I learn from Mr. Osgood, some seventy-six thousand five hundred and forty-three Young Folks, be the same

more or less, who are reading this paper. How am I to tell what are their seventy-six thousand five hundred and forty-three tastes, dispositions, or lines of genius? I cannot tell. Perhaps they could not tell themselves, not being skilled in self-analysis; and it is by no means necessary that they should be able to tell. Perhaps we can set down on paper what will be much better, the rules or the system by which each of them may read well in the line of his own genius, and so find out before he has done with this life, what the line of that genius is, as far as there is any occasion.

DO NOT TRY TO READ EVERYTHING.

That is the first rule. Do not think you must be a Universal Genius. Do not "read all Reviews," as an old code I had bade young men do. And give up, as early as you can, the passion, with which all young people naturally begin, of "keeping up with the literature of the time." As for the literature of the time, if one were to adopt any extreme rule, Mr. Emerson's would be the better of the two possible extremes. He says it is wise to read no book till it has been printed a year; that, before the year is well over, many of those books drift out of sight, which just now all the newspapers are telling you to read. But then, seriously, I do not suppose he acts on that rule himself. Nor need you and I. Only, we will not try to read them all.

Here I must warn my young friend Jamie not



to go on talking about renouncing "nineteenth century trash."

It will not do to use such words about a century in which have written Goethe, Fichte, Cuvier, Schleiermacher, Martineau, Scott, Tennyson, Thackeray, Browning, and Dickens, not to mention a hundred others whom Jamie likes to read as much as I do.¹

No. We will trust to conversation with the others, who have had their different paths in this picnic party of ours, to learn from them just the brightest and best things that they have seen and heard. And we will try to be able to tell them, simply and truly, the best things we find on our own paths. Now, for selecting the path, what shall we do,—since one cannot in one little life attempt them all?

You can select for yourself, if you will only keep a cool head, and have your eyes open. First of all, remember that what you want from books is the information in them, and the stimulus they give to you, and the amusement for your recreation. You do not read for the poor pleasure of saying you have read them. You are reading for the subject, much more than for the particular book, and if you find that you have exhausted all the book has on your subject, then you are to leave that book, whether you have read it through or not. In some cases you read because the author's own mind is worth knowing; and then the more

¹ Written, observe, in 1869.

you read the better you know him. But these cases do not affect the rule. You read for what is in the books, not that you may mark such a book off from a "course of reading," or say at the next meeting of the "Philogabblian Society" that you "have just been reading Kant" or "Godwin." What is the subject, then, which you want to read upon?

Half the boys and girls who read this have been so well trained that they know. They know what they want to know. One is sure that she wants to know more about Mary Queen of Scots; another, that he wants to know more about fly-fishing; another, that she wants to know more about the Egyptian hieroglyphics; another, that he wants to know more about propagating new varieties of pansies; another, that she wants to know more about "The Ring and the Book;" another, that he wants to know more about the "Tenure of Office bill." Happy is this half. To know your ignorance is the great first step to its relief. To confess it, as has been said before, is the second. In a minute I will be ready to say what I can to this happy half; but one minute first for the less happy half, who know they want to read something because it is so nice to read a pleasant book, but who do not know what that something is. They come to us, as their ancestors came to a relative of mine who was a librarian of a town library¹ sixty years ago:

¹ In Dorchester, Mass.

"Please, sir, mother wants a sermon book, and another book."

To these undecided ones I simply say, now has the time come for decision. Your school studies have undoubtedly opened up so many subjects to you that you very naturally find it hard to select between them. Shall you keep up your drawing, or your music, or your history, or your botany, or your chemistry? Very well in the schools, my dear Alice, to have started you in these things, but now you are coming to be a woman, it is for you to decide which shall go forward; it is not for Miss Winstanley, far less for me, who never saw your face, and know nothing of what you can or cannot do.

Now you can decide in this way. Tell me, or tell yourself, what is the passage in your reading or in your life for the last week which rests on your memory. Let us see if we thoroughly understand that passage. If we do not, we will see if we cannot learn to. That will give us a "course of reading" for the next twelve months, or if we choose, for the rest of our lives. There is no end, you will see, to a true course of reading; and, on the other hand, you may about as well begin at one place as another. Remember that you have infinite lives before you, so you need not hurry in the details for fear the work should be never done.

Now I must show you how to go to work, by supposing you have been interested in some par-

ticular passage. Let us take a passage from Macaulay, which I marked in the *Edinburgh Review* for Sydney to speak, twenty-nine years ago, — I think before I had ever heard Macaulay's name. A great many of you boys have spoken it at school since then, and many of you girls have heard scraps from it. It is a brilliant passage, rather too ornate for daily food, but not amiss for a luxury, more than candied orange is after a state dinner. He is speaking of the worldly wisdom and skilful human policy of the method of organization of the Roman Catholic Church. He says: —

“The history of that Church joins together the two great ages of human civilization. No other institution is left standing which carries the mind back to the times when the smoke of sacrifice rose from the Pantheon, when camelopards and tigers bounded in the Flavian amphitheatre. The proudest royal houses are but of yesterday when compared with the line of the Supreme Pontiffs. That line we trace back, in an unbroken series, from the Pope who crowned Napoleon in the nineteenth century to the Pope who crowned Pepin in the eighth; and far beyond the time of Pepin the august dynasty extends, till it is lost in the twilight of fable. The Republic of Venice came next in antiquity. But the Republic of Venice was modern when compared to the Papacy; and the Republic of Venice is gone, and the Papacy remains. The Papacy remains, not in



How to Read

81

decay, not a mere antique, but full of life and youthful vigor. The Catholic Church is still sending forth to the farthest ends of the world missionaries as zealous as those who landed in Kent with Augustine; and still confronting hostile kings with the same spirit with which she confronted Attila. . . .

"She was great and respected before the Saxon had set foot on Britain, before the Frank had passed the Rhine, when Grecian eloquence still flourished at Antioch, when idols were still worshipped in the temple of Mecca. And she may still exist in undiminished vigor when some traveller from New Zealand shall, in the midst of a vast solitude, take his stand on a broken arch of London Bridge to sketch the ruins of St. Paul's."

I. We will not begin by considering the wisdom or the mistake of the general opinion here laid down. We will begin by trying to make out what is the real meaning of the leading words employed. Look carefully along the sentence, and see if you are quite sure of what is meant by such terms as "The Roman Catholic Church," "the Pantheon," "the Flavian amphitheatre," "the Supreme Pontiffs," "the Pope who crowned Napoleon," "the Pope who crowned Pepin," "the Republic of Venice," "the missionaries who landed in Kent," "Augustine," "the Saxon had set foot in Britain," "the Frank had passed the Rhine," "Grecian eloquence still flourished at Antioch," "idols in

Mecca," "New Zealand," "London Bridge," "St. Paul's."

For really working up a subject—and this sentence now is to be our subject—I advise a blank book, and, for my part, I like to write down the key words or questions, in a vertical line, quite far apart from each other, on the first pages. You will see why, if you will read on.

II. Now go to work on this list. What do you really know about the organization of the Roman Catholic Church? If you find you are vague about it, that such knowledge as you have is only half knowledge, which is no knowledge, read till you are clear. Much information is not necessary, but good, as far as it goes, is necessary on any subject. This is a controverted subject. You ought to try, therefore, to read some statement by a Catholic author, and some statement by a Protestant. To find out what to read on this or any subject, there are different clews.

1. Any encyclopædia, good or bad, will set you on the trail. Most of you have or can have an encyclopædia at command. There are one-volume encyclopædias, better than nothing, which are very cheap. You can pick up an edition of the old "Encyclopædia Americana," in twelve volumes, for ten or twelve dollars. Or you can buy Appleton's, which is really quite good, for sixty dollars a set. I do not mean to have you rest on any encyclopædia, but you will find one at the start an excellent guide-post. Suppose you have the old



"Encyclopædia Americana." You will find there that the "Roman Catholic Church" is treated by two writers, — one a Protestant, and one a Catholic. Read both, and note in your book such allusions as interest you, which you want more light upon. Do not note everything which you do not know, for then you cannot get forward. But note all that specially interest you. For instance, it seems that the Roman Catholic Church is not so called by that church itself. The officers of that church might call it the Roman Church, or the Catholic Church, but would not call it the Roman Catholic Church. At the Congress of Vienna, Cardinal Consalvi objected to the joint use of the words Roman Catholic Church. Do you know what the Congress of Vienna was? No? then make a memorandum, if you want to know. We might put in another for Cardinal Consalvi. He was a man, who had a father and mother, perhaps brothers and sisters. He will give us a little human interest if we stop to look him up. But do not stop for him now. Work through "Roman Catholic Church," and keep these memoranda in your book for another day.

2. Quite different from the encyclopædia is another book of reference, "Poole's Index." This is a general index to seventy-three magazines and reviews, which were published between the years 1802 and 1852. Now a great deal of the best work of this century has been put into such journals. A reference, then, to "Poole's Index"

is a reference to some of the best separate papers on the subjects which for fifty years had most interest for the world of reading men and women. Let us try "Poole's Index" on "The Republic of Venice." There are references to articles on Venice in the *New England Magazine*, in the *Pamphleteer*, in the *Monthly Review*, *Edinburgh, Quarterly*, *Westminster*, and *De Bow's Reviews*. Copy all these references carefully, if you have any chance at any time of access to any of these journals. It is not, you know, at all necessary to have them in the house. Probably there is some friend's collection or public library where you can find one or more of them. If you live in or near Boston, or New York, or Philadelphia, or Charleston, or New Orleans, or Cincinnati, or Chicago, or St. Louis, or Ithaca, you can find every one.¹

When you have carefully gone down this original list, and made your memoranda for it, you are prepared to work out these memoranda. You begin now to see how many there are. You must be guided, of course, in your reading, by the time you have, and by the opportunity for getting the books. But aside from that, you may choose what you like best for a beginning. To make this simple by an illustration, I will suppose you have been using the old "Encyclopædia Americana," or "Appleton's Cyclopædia" and "Poole's Index" only, for your first list. As I should draw it up, it would look like this: —

¹ These were the names in 1871.



How to Read

85

CYCLOPÆDIA.

POOLE'S INDEX.

ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH.

See (for instance)	Eclectic Rev., 4th S. 13, 485.
Council of Trent.	Quart. Rev., 71, 108.
Chrysostom.	For. Quart. Rev., 27, 184.
Congress of Vienna.	Brownson's Rev., 2d S. 1, 413;
	3, 309.
Cardinal Consalvi.	N. Brit. Rev., 10, 21.

THE PANTHEON.

Built by Agrippa. Consecrated,
607, to St. Mary ad Martyros.
Called Rotunda.

THE FLAVIAN AMPHITHEATRE.

The Coliseum, *b.* by T. Flavius
Vespasian.

SUPREME PONTIFFS.

Popes. The line begins with | New Englander, 7, 169.
St. Peter, A. D. 42. Ends with | N. Brit. Rev., 11, 13.
Pius IX., 1846.

POPE WHO CROWNED NAPOLEON.

Pius VII., at Notre Dame, in | For. Quart. Rev., 20, 54.
Paris, Dec. 2, 1804.

POPE WHO CROWNED PEPIN.

Probably Pepin le Bref is meant.
But he was not crowned by
a Pope. Crowned by Arch-
bishop Boniface of Mayence,
at the advice of Pope Zach-
ary. *b.* @ 715, *d.* 768.

REPUBLIC OF VENICE.

452 to 1815. St. Real's His- | Quart. Rev., 31, 420.
tory.
Otway's Tragedy, Venice Pre- | Month. Rev., 90, 525.
served.
Hazlitt's Hist. of Venice. | West. Rev., 23, 38.
Ruskin's Stones of Venice.

MISSIONARIES IN KENT.

| Dublin Univ. Mag., 21, 212.

AUGUSTINE.

There are two Augustines. This
is St. Austin, *b.* in 5th cen-
tury, *d.* 604-614.

Southey's Book of Church.

Sharon Turner's Anglo-Saxons.

Wm. of Malmesbury

Bede's Ecc. History.

SAXON IN BRITAIN.

Turner as above,

Ang.-Saxon Chronicle.

Six old Eng. Chronicles.

Edin. Rev., 89, 79.

Quart. Rev., 7, 92.

Eclect. Rev., 25, 669.

FRANK PASSED THE RHINE.

Well established on west side
at the beginning of 5th cen-
tury.

For. Quart. Rev., 17, 139.

GREEK ELOQUENCE AT ANTIOCH.

Müller's Antiquitates Antioch-
ianæ.

Greek Orators. Ed. Rev., 36
62.

IDOLS IN MECCA.

Burckhardt's Travels.

Burton's Travels.

NEW ZEALAND.

3 islands, as large as Italy. Dis-
covered 1642; taken by Cook
for England 1769.

Gov. sent out 1838.

Thomson's story of N. Z.

Cook's Voyages.

Sir G. Gray's Poems, &c., of
Maoris.

N. Am. Rev., 18, 328.

West. Rev., 45, 133.

Edin. Rev., 91, 231; 56, 333.

N. Brit. Rev., 16, 176.

Living Age.



How to Read

87

LONDON BRIDGE.

5 elliptical arches. "Presents
an aspect unequalled for in-
terest and animation."

ST. PAUL'S.

Built in thirty years between
1675 and 1705, by Christ.
Wren.

Now I am by no means going to leave you to the reading of cyclopædias. The vice of cyclopædias is that they are dull. What is done for this passage of Macaulay in the lists above is only preliminary. It could be easily done in three hours' time, if you went carefully to work. And when you have done it, you have taught yourself a good deal about your own knowledge and your own ignorance,—about what you should read, and what you should not attempt. So far it fits you for selecting your own course of reading.

I have arranged this only by way of illustration. I do not mean that I think these a particularly interesting or particularly important series of subjects. I do mean, however, to show you that the moment you will sift any book or any series of subjects, you will be finding out where your ignorance is, and what you want to know.

Supposing you belong to the fortunate half of people who know what they need, I should advise you to begin in just the same way.

For instance, Walter, to whom I alluded above, wants to know about *Fly-fishing*. This is the way his list looks: —

FLY-FISHING.

CYCLOPÆDIA.

(For instance)
 W. Scott, Redgauntlet.
 Dr. Davy's Researches, 1839.
 Cuvier and Valenciennes, Hist.
 Naturelle des Poissons, Vol.
 XXI.
 Richardson's Fauna Bor. Amer.
 De Kay, Zoölogy of N. Y.
 Agassiz, Lake Superior.

POOLE'S INDEX.

Quart. Rev., 69, 121; 37, 345.
 Edin. Rev., 78, 46, or 87; 93,
 174, or 340.
 Am. Whig Rev., 6, 490.
 N. Brit. Rev., 11, 32, or 95; 1,
 326; 8, 160; or Liv. Age, 2,
 291; 17, 1.
 Blackwood, 51, 296.
 Quart. Rev. 67, 98, or 332; 69,
 226.
 Blackwood, 10, 249; 49, 302;
 21, 815; 24, 248; 35, 775;
 38, 119, 63, 673; 5, 123; 5,
 281, 7, 137.
 Fraser, 42, 136.

See also,

Izaak Walton, Compleat Angler. (Walton and Cotton first appeared 1750.)

Humphrey Day's Salmonia, or The Days of Fly-Fishing.
 Blakey, History of Angling Literature.

Oppianus, De Venatione, Piscatione et Aucupio. (Hali-eutica translated.) Jones's English translation was published in Oxford, 1722.

Bronner, Fischergedichte und Erzählungen (Fishermen's Songs and Stories).

Norris, T., American Angler's Book.

Zouch, Life of Iz. Walton.

Salmon Fisheries. Parliamentary Reports. Annual.

"Blackwood's Magazine, an important landmark in English angling literature." See Noctes Ambrosianæ.

H.W. Beecher, N. Y. Independent, 1853.

In the New York edition of Walton and Cotton is a list of books on Angling, which Blakey enlarges. His list contains four hundred and fifty titles.

American's Angler's Guide, 1849.

Storer, D. H., Fishes of Massachusetts.



How to Read

89

- Storer, D. H., *Fishes of N. America.*
Girard, *Fresh-Water Fishes of N. America* (Smithsonian Contributions, Vol. III.).
Richard Penn, *Maxims and Hints for an Angler, and Miseries of Fishing*, 1839.
James Wilson, *The Rod and the Gun*, 1840.
Herbert, Frank Forester's *Fish of N. America.*
Yarrel's *British Fishes.*
The same, *on the Growth of Salmon.*
Boy's Own Book.

Please to observe, now, that nobody is obliged to read up all the authorities that we have lighted on. What the list means is this: that you have made the inquiry for "a sermon book and another book," and you are now thus far on your way toward an answer. These are the first answers that come to hand. Work on and you will have more. I cannot pretend to give that answer for any one of you, — far less for all those who would be likely to be interested in all the subjects which are named here. But with such clews as are given above, you will soon find your ways into the different parts that interest you of our great picnic grove.

Remember, however, that there are no royal roads. The difference between a well-educated person and one not well educated is, that the first knows how to find what he needs, and the other does not. It is not so much that the first is better informed on details than the second, though he probably is. But his power to collect the details at short notice is vastly greater than is that of the uneducated or unlearned man.

In different homes the resources at command are so different that I must not try to advise much as to your next step beyond the lists above. There are many good catalogues of books, with indexes to subjects. In the Congressional Library, my friend Mr. Vinton is preparing a magnificent "Index of Subjects," which will be of great use to the whole nation. In Harvard College Library they have a manuscript catalogue referring to the subjects described in the books of that collection. The "Cross-References" of the Astor Catalogue, and of the Boston Library Catalogue, are invaluable to all readers, young or old. Your teacher at school can help you in nothing more than in directing you to the books you need on any subject. Do not go and say, "Miss Winstanley, or Miss Parsons, I want a nice book;" but have sense enough to know what you want it to be about. Be able to say, "Miss Parsons, I should like to know about heraldry," or "about butterflies," or "about water-color painting," or "about Robert Browning," or "about the Mysteries of Udolpho." Miss Parsons will tell you what to read. And she will be very glad to tell you. Or if you are not at school, this very thing among others is what the minister is for. Do not be frightened. He will be very glad to see you. Go round to his house, not on Saturday, but at the time he receives guests, and say to him: "Mr. Ingham, we girls have made quite a collection of old porcelain, and we want to know more about it.



How to Read

91

Will you be kind enough to tell us where we can find anything about porcelain? We have read Miss Edgeworth's 'Prussian Vase,' and we have read 'Palissy the Potter,' and we should like to know more about Sèvres, and Dresden, and Palissy." Ingham will be delighted, and in a fortnight, if you will go to work, you will know more about what you ask for than any one person knows in America.

And I do not mean that all your reading is to be digging or hard work. I can show that I do not, by supposing that we carry out the plan of the list above, on any one of its details, and write down the books which that detail suggests to us. Perhaps VENICE has seemed to you the most interesting head of these which we have named. If we follow that up only in the references given above, we shall find our book list for Venice, just as it comes, in no order but that of accident, is: —

St. Real, *Relation des Espagnols contre Venise*.

Otway's *Venice Preserved*.

Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*.

Howells's *Venetian Life*.

Blondus, *De Origine Venetorum*.

Muratori's *Annals*.

Ruskin's *Stones of Venice*.

D'Israeli's *Contarini Fleming*.

Contarina, *Della Repubblica di Venetia*.

Flagg, *Venice from 1797 to 1849*.

Crassus, *De Republica Veneta*.

Jarmot, *De Republica Veneta*.

Voltaire's *General History*.

Sismondi's *History of Italy*.

Lord Byron's Letters.

Sketches of Venetian History, Fam. Library, 26, 27.

Venetian History, Hazlitt.

Dandolo, G. La Caduta della Repubblica di Venezia (The Fall of the Republic of Venice).

Ridolfi, C., Lives of the Venetian Painters.

Monagas, J. T., Late Events in Venice.

Delavigne, Marino Faliero, a Historical Drama.

Lord Byron, The same.

Smedley's Sketches from Venetian History.

Daru, Hist. de la République de Venise.

So much for the way in which to choose your books. As to the choice, you will make it, not I. If you are a goose, cackling a great deal, silly at heart and wholly indifferent about to-morrow, you will choose just what you call the interesting titles. If you are a girl of sense, or a boy of sense, you will choose, when you have made your list, at least two books, determined to master them. You will choose one on the side of information, and one, for the purpose of amusement, on the side of fancy. If you choose in "*Venice*" the "Merchant of Venice," you will not add to it "Venice Preserved," but you will add to it, say the Venetian chapters of "Sismondi's Italy." You will read every day; and you will divide your reading time into the two departments, — you will read for fact and you will read for fancy. Roots must have leaves, you know, and leaves must have roots. Bodies must have spirits, and, for this world at least, spirits must have bodies. Fact must be lighted by fancy, and fancy must be balanced by fact. Making this the principle of your selection,



How to Read 93

you may, nay, you must, select for yourselves your books. And in my next chapter I will do my best to teach you —

HOW TO READ THEM.

CHAPTER VI

HOW TO READ

II

LISTON tells a story of a nice old lady, I think the foster-sister of the godmother of his brother-in-law's aunt, who came to make them a visit in the country. The first day after she arrived proved to be much such a day as this is, much such a day as the first of a visit in the country is apt to be, a heavy pelt-ing northeaster, when it is impossible to go out, and every one is thrown on his own resources in-doors. The different ladies under Mrs. Liston's hospitable roof gathered themselves to their various occupations, and some one asked old Mrs. Dubba-doe if she would not like to read.

She said she should.

"What shall I bring you from the library?" said Miss Ellen. "Do not trouble yourself to go upstairs."

"My dear Ellen, I should like the same book I had last year when I was here. It was a very nice book, and I was very much interested in it."

"Certainly," said Miss Ellen; "what was it? I will bring it at once."

"I do not remember its name, my dear; your mother brought it to me; I think she would know."

But, unfortunately, Mrs. Liston, when applied to, had forgotten.

"Was it a novel, Mrs. Dubbadoe?"

"I can't remember that; my memory is not as good as it was, my dear, but it was a very interesting book."

"Do you remember whether it had plates? Was it one of the books of birds, or of natural history?"

"No, dear, I can't tell you about that. But, Ellen, you will find it, I know. The color of the cover was the color of the top of the baluster!"

So Ellen went. She has a good eye for color, and as she ran upstairs she took the shade of the baluster in her eye, matched it perfectly, as she ran along the books in the library, with the Russia half-binding of the coveted volume, and brought that in triumph to Mrs. Dubbadoe. It proved to be the right book. Mrs. Dubbadoe found in it the piece of corn-colored worsted she had left for a mark the year before, so she was able to go on where she had stopped then.

Liston tells this story to trump one of mine about a schoolmate of ours, who was explaining to me about his theological studies. I asked him what he had been reading.



How to Read

95

"Oh, a capital book; King lent it to me; I will ask him to lend it to you."

I said I would ask King for the book, if he would tell me who was the author.

"I do not remember his name. I had not known his name before. But that made no difference. It is a capital book. King told me I should find it so, and I did; I made a real study of it; copied a good deal from it before I returned it."

I asked whether it was a book of natural theology.

"I don't know as you would call it natural theology. Perhaps it was. You had better see it yourself. Tell King it was the book he lent me."

I was a little persistent, and asked if it were a book of biography.

"Well, I do not know as I should say it was a book of biography. Perhaps you would say so. I do not remember that there was much biography in it. But it was an excellent book. King had read it himself, and I found it all he said it was."

I asked if it was critical, — if it explained Scripture.

"Perhaps it did. I should not like to say whether it did or not. You can find that out yourself if you read it. But it is a very interesting book and a very valuable book. King said so, and I found it was so. You had better read it, and I know King can tell you what it is."

Now in these two stories is a very good illustra-

tion of the way in which a great many people read. The notion comes into people's lives that the mere process of reading is itself virtuous. Because young men who read instead of gamble are known to be "steadier" than the gamblers, and because children who read on Sunday make less noise and general row than those who will play tag in the neighbors' front-yards, there has grown up this notion, that to read is in itself one of the virtuous acts. Some people, if they told the truth, when counting up the seven virtues, would count them as Purity, Temperance, Meekness, Frugality, Honesty, Courage, and Reading. The consequence is that there are unnumbered people who read as Mrs. Dubbadoe did or as Lysimachus did, without the slightest knowledge of what the books have contained.

My dear Dollie, Pollie, Sallie, Marthie, or any other of my young friends whose names end in *ie*, who have favored me by reading thus far, the chances are three out of four that I could take the last novel but three that you read, change the scene from England to France, change the time from now to the seventeenth century, make the men swear by St. Denis, instead of talking modern slang, name the women Jacqueline and Marguerite, instead of Maud and Blanche, and, if Harpers would print it, as I dare say they would if the novel was good, you would read it through without one suspicion that you had read the same book before.

So you see that it is not certain that you know how to read, even if you took the highest prize for



How to Read

97

reading in the Amplian class of Ingham University at the last exhibition. You may pronounce all the words well, and have all the rising inflections right, and none of the falling ones wrong, and yet not know how to read so that your reading shall be of any permanent use to you.

For what is the use of reading if you forget it all the next day?

"But, my dear Mr. Hale," says as good a girl as Laura, "how am I going to help myself? What I remember I remember, and what I do not remember I do not. I should be very glad to remember all the books I have read, and all that is in them; but if I can't, I can't, and there is the end of it."

No! my dear Laura, that is not the end of it. And that is the reason this paper is written. A child of God can, before the end comes, do anything she chooses to, with such help as he is willing to give her; and he has been kind enough so to make and so to train you that you can train your memory to remember and to recall the useful or the pleasant things you meet in your reading. Do you know, Laura, that I have here a note you wrote when you were eight years old? It is as badly written as any note I ever saw. There are also twenty words in it spelled wrong. Suppose you had said then, "If I can't, I can't, and there's an end of it." You never would have written me in the lady-like, manly handwriting you write in to-day, spelling rightly as a matter of mere feeling and of course, so that you are annoyed

now that I should say that every word is spelled correctly. Will you think, dear Laura, what a tremendous strain on memory is involved in all this? Will you remember that you and Miss Sears and Miss Winstanley, and your mother, most of all, have trained your memory till it can work these marvels? All you have to do now in your reading is to carry such training forward, and you can bring about such a power of classification and of retention that you shall be mistress of the books you have read for most substantial purposes. To read with such results is reading indeed. And when I say I want to give some hints how to read, it is for reading with that view.

When Harry and Lucy were on their journey to the sea-side, they fell to discussing whether they had rather have the gift of remembering all they read, or of once knowing everything, and then taking their chances for recollecting it when they wanted it. Lucy, who had a quick memory, was willing to take her chance. But Harry, who was more methodical, hated to lose anything he had once learned, and he thought he had rather have the good fairy give him the gift of recollecting all he had once learned. For my part, I quite agree with Harry. There are a great many things that I have no desire to know. I do not want to know in what words the King of Ashantee says, "Cut off the heads of those women." I do not want to know whether a centipede really has ninety-six legs or one hundred and four. I never

did know. I never shall. I have no occasion to know. And I am glad not to have my mind lumbered up with the unnecessary information. On the other hand, that which I have once learned or read does in some way or other belong to my personal life. I am very glad if I can reproduce that in any way, and I am much obliged to anybody who will help me.

For reading, then, the first rules, I think, are: Do not read too much at a time; stop when you are tired; and, in whatever way, make some review of what you read, even as you go along.

Capel Lofft says, in quite an interesting book, which plays about the surface of things without going very deep, which he calls "Self-Formation,"¹ that his whole life was changed, and indeed saved, when he learned that he must turn back at the end of each sentence, ask himself what it meant, if he believed it or disbelieved it, and, so to speak, that he must pack it away as part of his mental furniture before he took in another sentence. That is just as a dentist jams one little bit of gold-foil home, and then another, and then another. He does not put one large wad on the hollow tooth, and then crowd it in all at once. Capel Lofft says that this *re-flection* — going forward as a serpent does, by a series of backward bends over the line — will make a dull book entertaining, and will make the reader master of every book he reads, through all time. For my part, I think

¹ Self-Formation : Crosby and Nichols. Boston, 1845.

this is cutting it rather fine, this chopping the book up into separate bits. I had rather read as one of my wisest counsellors did; he read, say a page, or a paragraph of a page or two, more or less; then he would look across at the wall, and consider the author's statement, and fix it on his mind, and then read on. I do not do this, however. I read half an hour or an hour, till I am ready, perhaps, to put the book by. Then I examine myself. What has this amounted to? What does he say? What does he prove? Does he prove it? What is there new in it? Where did he get it? If it is necessary in such an examination, you can go back over the passage, correct your first impression, if it is wrong, find out the meaning that the writer has carelessly concealed, and such a process makes it certain that you yourself will remember his thought or his statement.

I can remember, I think, everything I saw in Europe which was worth seeing, if I saw it twice. But there was many a wonder which I was taken to see in the whirl of sight-seeing, of which I have no memory, and of which I cannot force any recollection. I remember that at Malines — what we call Mechlin — our train stopped nearly an hour. At the station a crowd of guides were shouting that there was time to go and see Rubens's picture of —, at the church of —. This seemed to us a droll contrast to the cry at our stations, "Fifteen minutes for refreshments!" It offered such æsthetic refreshment in place of



How to Read

101

carnal oysters, that purely for the frolic we went to see. We were hurried across some sort of square into the church, saw the picture, admired it, came away, and forgot it,—clear and clean forgot it! My dear Laura, I do not know what it was about any more than you do. But if I had gone to that church the next day, and had seen it again, I should have fixed it forever on my memory. Moral: Renew your acquaintance with whatever you want to remember. I think Ingham says somewhere that it is the slight difference between the two stereoscopic pictures which gives to them, when one overlies the other, their relief and distinctness. If he does not say it, I will say it for him now.

I think it makes no difference how you make this mental review of the author, but I do think it essential that, as you pass from one division of his work to another, you should make it somehow.

Another good rule for memory is indispensable, I think,—namely, to read with a pencil in hand. If the book is your own, you had better make what I may call your own index to it on the hard white page which lines the cover at the end. That is, you can write down there just a hint of the things you will be apt to like to see again, noting the page on which they are. If the book is not your own, do this on a little slip of paper, which you may keep separately. These memoranda will be, of course, of all sorts of things.

Thus they will be facts which you want to know, or funny stories which you think will amuse some one, or opinions which you may have a doubt about. Suppose you had got hold of that very rare book, "Veragas's History of the Pacific Ocean and its Shores;" here might be your private index at the end of the first volume: —

Percentage of salt in water, 11: Gov. Revillagigedo, 19: Caciques and potatoes, 23: Lime water for scurvy, 29: Enata, Kanaka, ἀνὴρ, ἀνά? 42: Magelhaens *vs.* Wilkes, 57: Coral Insects, 72: Gigantic ferns, 84, &c., &c., &c.

Very likely you may never need one of these references; but if you do, it is certain that you will have no time to waste in hunting for them. Make your memorandum, and you are sure.

Bear in mind all along that each book will suggest other books which you are to read sooner or later. In your memoranda note with care the authors who are referred to of whom you know little or nothing, if you think you should like to know more, or ought to know more. Do not neglect this last condition, however. You do not make the memorandum to show it at the Philogabblian; you make it for yourself; and it means that you yourself need this additional information.

Whether to copy much from books or not? That is a question; and the answer is: "That depends." If you have but few books, and much time and paper and ink; and if you are



How to Read 103

likely to have fewer books, why, nothing is nicer and better than to make for use in later life good extract-books to your own taste, and for your own purposes. But if you own your books, or are likely to have them at command, time is short, and the time spent in copying would probably be better spent in reading. There are some very diffusive books, difficult because diffusive, of which it is well to write close digests, if you are really studying them. When we read John Locke, for instance, in college, we had to make abstracts, and we used to stint ourselves to a line for one of his chatty sections. That was good practice for writing, and we remember what was in the sections to this hour. If you copy, make a first-rate index to your extracts. They sell books prepared for the purpose, but you may just as well make your own.

You see I am not contemplating any very rapid or slap-dash work. You may try that in your novels, or books of amusement, if you choose, and I will not be very cross about it; but for the books of improvement, I want you to improve by reading them. Do not "gobble" them up so that five years hence you shall not know whether you have read them or not. What I advise seems slow to you, but if you will, any of you, make or find two hours a day to read in this fashion, you will be one day accomplished men and women. Very few professional men, known to me, get so much time as that for careful and systematic read-

ing. If any boy or girl wants really to know what comes of such reading, I wish he would read the life of my friend George Livermore, which our friend Charles Deane has just now written for the Historical Society of Massachusetts. There was a young man, who when he was a boy in a store began his systematic reading. He never left active and laborious business; but when he died he was one of the accomplished historical scholars of America. He had no superior in his special lines of study; he was a recognized authority and leader among men who had given their lives to scholarship.

I have not room to copy it here, but I wish any of you would turn to a letter of Frederick Robertson's near the end of the second volume of his letters, where he speaks of this very matter. He says he read, when he was at Oxford, but sixteen books with his tutors. But he read them so that they became a part of himself, "as the iron enters a man's blood." And they were books by sixteen of the men who have been leaders of the world. No bad thing, dear Stephen, to have in your blood and brain and bone the vitalizing element that was in the lives of such men.

I need not ask you to look forward so far as to the end of a life as long as Mr. George Livermore's, and as successful. Without asking that, I will say again, what I have implied already, that any person who will take any special subject of detail, and in a well-provided library will work steadily



How to go into Society 105

on that little subject for a fortnight, will at the end of the fortnight probably know more of that detail than anybody in the country knows. If you will study by subjects for the truth, you have the satisfaction of knowing that the ground is soon very nearly all your own.

I do not pretend that books are everything. I may have occasion some day to teach some of you "How to Observe," and then I shall say some very hard things about people who keep their books so close before their eyes that they cannot see God's world nor their fellow men and women. But books rightly used are society. Good books are the best society; better than is possible without them, in any one place, or in any one time. To know how to use them wisely and well is to know how to make Shakespeare and Milton and Theodore Hook and Thomas Hood step out from the side of your room, at your will, sit down at your fire, and talk with you for an hour. I have no such society at hand as I write these words, except by such magic. Have you, in your log-cabin in No. 7?

CHAPTER VII

HOW TO GO INTO SOCIETY

SOME boys and girls are born so that they enjoy society, and all the forms of society, from the beginning. The passion they have for it takes them



right through all the formalities and stiffness of morning calls, evening parties, visits on strangers, and the like, and they have no difficulty about the duties involved in these things. I do not write for them, and there is no need at all of their reading this paper.

There are other boys and girls who look with half horror and half disgust at all such machinery of society. They have been well brought up, in intelligent, civilized, happy homes. They have their own varied and regular occupations, and it breaks these all up when they have to go to the birthday party at the Glascocks', or to spend the evening with the young lady from Vincennes who is visiting Mrs. Vandermeyer.

When they have grown older, it happens very likely that such boys and girls have to leave home, and establish themselves at one or another new home, where more is expected of them in a social way. Here is Stephen, who has gone through the High School, and has now gone over to New Altona to be the second teller in the Third National Bank there. Stephen's father was in college with Mr. Brannan, who was quite a leading man in New Altona. Madame Chenevard is a sister of Mrs. Schuyler, with whom Stephen's mother worked five years on the Sanitary Commission. All the bank officers are kind to Stephen, and ask him to come to their houses; and he, who is one of these young folks whom I have been describing, who knows how to be happy at



How to go into Society 107

home, but does not know if he is entertaining or in any way agreeable in other people's homes, really finds that the greatest hardship of his new life consists in the hospitalities with which all these kind people welcome him.

Here is a part of a letter from Stephen to me — he writes pretty much everything to me: —

“. . . Mrs. Judge Tolman has invited me to another of her evening parties. Everybody says they are very pleasant, and I can see that they are to people who are not sticks and oafs. But I am a stick and an oaf. I do not like society, and I never did. So I shall decline Mrs. Tolman's invitation ; for I have determined to go to no more parties here, but to devote my evenings to reading.”

Now this is not snobbery or goodyism on Stephen's part. He is not writing a make-believe letter, to deceive me as to the way in which he is spending his time. He really had rather occupy his evening in reading than in going to Mrs. Tolman's party, — or to Mrs. Anybody's party, — and, at the present moment, he really thinks he never shall go to any parties again. Just so two little girls part from each other on the sidewalk, saying, “I never will speak to you again as long as I live.” Only Stephen is in no sort angry with Mrs. Tolman or Mrs. Brannan or Mrs. Chenevard. He only thinks that their way is one way, and his way is another. His determination is the same as Tom's was, which I described in Chapter II.

But where Tom thought his failure was want of talking power, Steve really thinks that he hates society.

It is for boys and girls like Stephen, who think they are "sticks and oafs," and that they cannot go into society, that this paper is written.

You need not get up from your seats and come and stand in a line for me to talk to you, — tallest at the right, shortest at the left, as if you were at dancing-school, facing M. Labbassé. I can talk to you just as well where you are sitting; and, as Obed Clapp said to me once, I know very well what you are going to say before you say it. Dear children, I have had it said to me fourscore and ten times by forty-six boys and forty-six girls who were just as dull and just as bright as you are, — as like you, indeed, as two pins.

There is Dunster, — Horace Dunster, — at this moment the favorite talker in society in Washington, as indeed he is on the floor of the Senate. Ask, the next time you are at Washington, how many dinner-parties are put off till a day can be found at which Dunster can be present. Now I remember very well how, a year or two after Dunster graduated, he and Messer, who is now Lieutenant-Governor of Labrador, and some one whom I will not name, were sitting on the shore of the Catteraugus Lake, rubbing themselves dry after their swim. And Dunster said he was not going to any more parties. Mrs. Judge Park had asked him, because she loved his sister, but she



How to go into Society 109

did not care for him a straw, and he did not know the Cattaraugus people, and he was afraid of the girls, who knew a great deal more than he did, and so he was "no good" to anybody, and he would not go any longer. He would stay at home and read Plato in the original. Messer wondered at all this; he enjoyed Mrs. Judge Park's parties, and Mrs. Dr. Holland's teas, and he could not see why as bright a fellow as Dunster should not enjoy them. "But I tell you," said Dunster, "that I do not enjoy them; and, what is more, I tell you that these people do not want me to come. They ask me because they like my sister, as I said, or my father, or my mother."

Then some one else who was there, whom I do not name, who was at least two years older than these young men, and so was qualified to advise them, addressed them thus:—

"You talk like children. Listen. It is of no consequence whether you like to go to these places or do not like to go. None of us were sent to Cattaraugus to do what we like to do. We were sent here to do what we can to make this place cheerful, spirited, and alive,—a part of the kingdom of heaven. Now if everybody in Cattaraugus sulked off to read Plato, or to read "The Three Guardsmen," Cattaraugus would go to the dogs very fast, in its general sulkiness. There must be intimate social order, and this is the method provided. Therefore, first, we must all of us go to these parties, whether we want to or not; because

we are in the world, not to do what we like to do, but what the world needs.

"Second," said this unknown some one, "nothing is more snobbish than this talk about Mrs. Park's wanting us or not wanting us. It simply shows that we are thinking of ourselves a good deal more than she is. What Mrs. Park wants is as many men at her party as she has women. She has made her list so as to balance them. As the result of that list, she has said she wanted me. Therefore I am going. Perhaps she does want me. If she does, I shall oblige her. Perhaps she does not want me. If she does not, I shall punish her, if I go, for telling what is not true; and I shall go cheered and buoyed up by that reflection. Anyway I go, not because I want to or do not want to, but because I am asked; and in a world of mutual relationships it is one of the things that I must do."

No one replied to this address, but they all three put on their dress-coats and went. Dunster went to every party in Cattaraugus that winter, and, as I have said, has since shown himself a most brilliant and successful leader of society.

The truth is to be found in this little sermon. Take society as you find it in the place where you live. Do not set yourself up, at seventeen years old, as being so much more virtuous or grand or learned than the young people round you, or the old people round you, that you cannot associate with them on the accustomed terms of the



How to go into Society 111

place. Then you are free from the first difficulty of young people who have trouble in society; for you will not be "stuck up," to use a very happy phrase of your own age. When anybody, in good faith, asks you to a party, and you have no pre-engagement or other duty, do not ask whether these people are above you or below you, whether they know more or know less than you do, least of all ask why they invited you,—but simply go. It is not of much importance whether on that particular occasion, you have what you call "a good time"¹ or do not have it. But it is of importance that you shall not think yourself a person of more consequence in the community than others, and that you shall easily and kindly adapt yourself to the social life of the people among whom you are.

This is substantially what I have written to Stephen about what he is to do at New Altona.

Now, as for enjoying yourself when you have come to the party,—for I wish you to understand that, though I have compelled you to go, I am not in the least cross about it,—but I want you to have what you yourself call a very good time when you come there. Oh dear, I can remember perfectly the first formal evening party at which I had "a good time." Before that I had always hated to go to parties, and since that I have al-

¹ I have heard the phrase criticised by people who ought to know. But they did not. Dryden says, "The sons of Belial had a glorious time." Dryden is a good enough authority for you and me.



ways liked to go. I am sorry to say I cannot tell you at whose house it was. That is ungrateful in me. But I could tell you just how the pillars looked between which the sliding doors ran, for I was standing by one of them when my eyes were opened, as the Orientals say, and I received great light. I had been asked to this party, as I supposed and as I still suppose, by some people who wanted my brother and sister to come, and thought it would not be kind to ask them without asking me. I did not know five people in the room. It was in a college town where there were five gentlemen for every lady, so that I could get nobody to dance with me of the people I did know. So it was that I stood sadly by this pillar, and said to myself, "You were a fool to come here where nobody wants you, and where you did not want to come; and you look like a fool standing by this pillar with nobody to dance with and nobody to talk to."

At this moment, and as if to enlighten the cloud in which I was, the revelation flashed upon me, which has ever since set me all right in such matters. Expressed in words, it would be stated thus: "You are a much greater fool if you suppose that anybody in this room knows or cares where you are standing or where you are not standing. They are attending to their affairs and you had best attend to yours, quite indifferent as to what they think of you." In this reflection I took immense comfort, and it has carried me through



How to go into Society 113

every form of social encounter from that day to this day. I don't remember in the least what I did, whether I looked at the portfolios of pictures, — which for some reason young people think a very poky thing to do, but which I like to do, — whether I buttoned some fellow-student who was less at ease than I, or whether I talked to some nice old lady who had seen with her own eyes half the history of the world which is worth knowing. I only know that, after I found out that nobody else at the party was looking at me or was caring for me, I began to enjoy it as thoroughly as I enjoyed staying at home.

Not long after I read this in Sartor Resartus, which was a great comfort to me: "What Act of Parliament was there that you should be happy? Make up your mind that you deserve to be hanged, as is most likely, and you will take it as a favor that you are hanged in silk, and not in hemp." Of which the application in this particular case is this: that if Mrs. Park or Mrs. Tolman are kind enough to open their beautiful houses for me, to fill them with beautiful flowers, to provide a band of music, to have ready their books of prints and their foreign photographs, to light up the walks in the garden and the greenhouse, and to provide a delicious supper for my entertainment, and then ask, I will say, only one person whom I want to see, is it not very ungracious, very selfish, and very snobbish for me to refuse to take what is, because of something which is not, — because Ellen is not

there or George is not? What Act of Parliament is there that I should have everything in my own way?

As it is with most things, then, the rule for going into society is not to have any rule at all. Go unconsciously; or, as St. Paul would put it, "Do not think of yourself more highly than you ought to think." Everything but conceit can be forgiven to a young person in society. St. Paul, by the way, high-toned gentleman as he was, is a very thorough guide in such affairs, as he is in most others. If you will get the marrow out of those little scraps at the end of his letters, you will not need any hand-books of etiquette.

As I read this over, to send it to the printer, I recollect that, in one of the nicest sets of girls I ever knew, they called the thirteenth chapter of the First Epistle to the Corinthians the "society chapter." Read it over, and see how well it fits, the next time Maud has been disagreeable, or you have been provoked yourself in the "German."

"The gentleman is quiet," says Mr. Emerson, whose essay on society you will read with profit, "the lady is serene." Bearing this in mind, you will not really expect, when you go to the dance at Mrs. Pollexfen's, that while you are standing in the library explaining to Mr. Sumner what he does not understand about the Alabama Claims, watching at the same time with jealous eye the fair form of Sybil as she is waltzing in that hated Clifford's arms, — you will not, I say, really expect that her



How to go into Society 115

light dress will be wafted into the gaslight over her head, she be surrounded with a lambent flame, Clifford basely abandon her, while she cries, "O Ferdinand, Ferdinand!" — nor that you, leaving Mr. Sumner, seizing Mrs. General Grant's camel's-hair shawl, rushing down the ball-room, will wrap it around Sybil's uninjured form, and receive then and there the thanks of her father and mother, and their pressing request for your immediate union in marriage. Such things do not happen outside the Saturday newspapers, and it is a great deal better that they do not. "The gentleman is quiet, and the lady is serene." In my own private judgment, the best thing you can do at any party is the particular thing which your host or hostess expected you to do when she made the party. If it is a whist party, you had better play whist, if you can. If it is a dancing party, you had better dance, if you can. If it is a music party, you had better play or sing, if you can. If it is a croquet party, join in the croquet, if you can. When at Mrs. Thorndike's grand party,¹ Mrs. Colonel Goffe, at seventy-seven, told old Rufus Putnam, who was five years her senior, that her dancing days were over, he said to her, "Well, it seems to be the amusement provided for the occasion." I think there is a good deal in that. At all events, do not separate yourself from the rest as if you were too old or too young, too wise or too foolish, or had

¹ Say in 1814. House still standing at the corner of Park and Beacon Streets, Boston.

not been enough introduced, or were in any sort of different clay from the rest of the pottery.

And now I will not undertake any specific directions for behavior. You know I hate them all. I will only repeat to you the advice which my father, who was my best friend, gave me after the first evening call I ever made. The call was on a gentleman whom both I and my father greatly loved. I knew he would be pleased to hear that I had made the visit, and, with some pride, I told him, being, as I calculate, thirteen years five months and nineteen days old. He was pleased, very much pleased, and he said so. "I am glad you made the call; it was a proper attention to Mr. Palfrey, who is one of your true friends and mine. And now that you begin to make calls, let me give you one piece of advice. Make them short. The people who see you may be very glad to see you. But it is certain they were occupied with something when you came, and it is certain, therefore, that you have interrupted them."

I was a little dashed in the enthusiasm with which I had told of my first visit. But the advice has been worth I cannot tell how much to me, — years of life, and hundreds of friends.

Pelham's rule for a visit is, "Stay till you have made an agreeable impression, and then leave immediately." A plausible rule, but dangerous. What if one should not make an agreeable impression after all? Did not Belch stay till near three in the morning? And when he went, because I



How to go into Society 117

had dropped asleep, did I not think him more disagreeable than ever?

For all I can say, or anybody else can say, it will be the manner of some people to give up meeting other people socially. I am very sorry for them, but I cannot help it. All I can say is that they will be sorry before they are done. I wish they would read Æsop's fable about the old man and his sons and the bundle of rods. I wish they would find out definitely why God gave them tongues and lips and ears. I wish they would take to heart the folly of this constant struggle in which they live, against the whole law of the being of a gregarious animal like man. What is it that Westerly writes me, whose note comes to me from the mail just as I finish this paper? "I do not look for much advance in the world until we can get people out of their own self." And what do you hear me quoting to you all the time, — which you can never deny,¹ — but that "the human race is the individual of which men and women are so many different members"? You may kick against this law, but it is true.

It is the truth around which, like a crystal round its nucleus, all modern civilization has taken order.

¹ From one of Fichte's Lectures.

CHAPTER VIII

HOW TO TRAVEL

FIRST, as to manner. You may travel on foot, on horseback, in a carriage with horses, in a carriage with steam, or in a steamboat or ship, and also in many other ways.

Of these, so far as mere outside circumstance goes, it is probable that the travelling with horses in a canal-boat is the pleasantest of all, granting that there is no crowd of passengers, and that the weather is agreeable. But there are so few parts of the world where this is now practicable, that we need not say much of it. The school-girls of this generation may well long for those old halcyon days of Miss Portia Lesley's School. In that ideal establishment the girls went to Washington to study political economy in the winter. They went to Saratoga in July and August to study the analytical processes of Chemistry. There was also a course there on the history of the Revolution. They went to Newport alternate years in the same months, to study the Norse literature and swimming. They went to the White Sulphur Springs and to Bath, to study the history of chivalry as illustrated in the annual tournaments. They went to Paris to study French, to Rome to study Latin, to Athens to study Greek. In all parts of the world where they could travel by canals they did



How to Travel

119

so. While on the journeys they studied their arithmetic and other useful matters, which had been passed by at the capitals. And while they were on the canals they washed and ironed their clothes, so as to be ready for the next stopping-place. You can do anything you choose on a canal.

Next to canal travelling, a journey on horse-back is the pleasantest. It is feasible for girls as well as boys, if they have proper escort and superintendence. You see the country; you know every leaf and twig; you are tired enough, and not too tired, when the day is done. When you are at the end of each day's journey you find you have, all the way along, been laying up a store of pleasant memories. You have a good appetite for supper, and you sleep in one nap for the nine hours between nine at night and six in the morning.

You might try this, Theodora,— you and Robert. I do not think your little pony would do, but your uncle will lend you Throg for a fortnight. There is nothing your uncle will not do for you, if you ask him the right way. When Robert's next vacation comes, after he has been at home a week, he will be glad enough to start. You had better go now and see your Aunt Fanny about it. She is always up to anything. She and your Uncle John will be only too glad of the excuse to do this thing again. They have not done it since they and I and P. came down through the Dixville

Notch all four on a hand gallop, with the rain running in sheets off our waterproofs. Get them to say they will go, and then hold them up to it.

For dress, you, Theodora, will want a regular bloomer to use when you are scrambling over the mountains on foot. Indeed, on the White Mountains now, the ladies best equipped ride up those steep pulls on men's saddles. For that work this is much the safest. Have a simple skirt to button round your waist while you are riding. It should be of waterproof, — the English is the best. Besides this, have a short waterproof sack with a hood, which you can put on easily if a shower comes. Be careful that it has a hood. Any crevice between the head cover and the back cover which admits air or wet to the neck is misery, if not fatal, in such showers as you are going to ride through. Do not forget your gymnasium dress.

You want another skirt for the evening, and this and your tooth-brush and linen must be put up tight and snug in two little bags. The old-fashioned saddle-bags will do nicely, if you can find a pair in the garret. The waterproof sack must be in another roll outside.

As for Robert, I shall tell him nothing about his dress. "A true gentleman is always so dressed that he can mount and ride for his life." That was the rule three hundred years ago, and I think it holds true now.

Do not try to ride too much in one day. At the start, in particular, take care that you do not



How to Travel

121

tire your horses or yourselves. For yourselves, very likely ten miles will be enough for the first day. It is not distance you are after, it is the enjoyment of every blade of grass, of every flying bird, of every whiff of air, of every cloud that hangs upon the blue.

Walking is next best. The difficulty is about baggage and sleeping-places; and then there has been this absurd theory, that girls cannot walk. But they can. School-boys—trying to make immense distances—blister their feet, strain their muscles, get disgusted, borrow money, and ride home in the stage. But this is all nonsense. Distance, as in riding, is not the object. Five miles is as good as fifty. On the other hand, while the riding party cannot well be larger than four, the more the merrier on the walking party. It is true that the fare is sometimes better where there are but few. Any number of boys and girls, if they can coax some older persons to go with them, who can supply sense and direction to the high spirits of the juniors, may undertake such a journey. There are but few rules; beyond them, each party may make its own.

First, never walk before breakfast. If you like, you may make two breakfasts and take a mile or two between. But be sure to eat something before you are on the road.

Second, do not walk much in the middle of the day. It is dusty and hot then; and the landscape has lost its special glory. By ten o'clock you



ought to have found some camping-ground for the day: a nice brook running through a grove; a place to draw or paint or tell stories or read them or write them; a place to make waterfalls and dams, to sail chips or build boats; a place to make a fire and a cup of tea for the oldsters. Stay here till four in the afternoon, and then push on in the two or three hours which are left to the sleeping-place agreed upon. Four or five hours on the road is all you want in each day. Even resolute idlers, as it is to be hoped you all are on such occasions, can get eight miles a day out of that,—and that is enough for a true walking party. Remember all along that you are not running a race with the railway train. If you were, you would be beaten certainly; and the less you think you are, the better. You are travelling in a method of which the merit is that it is not fast, and that you see every separate detail of the glory of the world. What a fool you are, then, if you tire yourself to death, merely that you may say that you did in ten hours what the locomotive would gladly have finished in one, if by that effort you have lost exactly the enjoyment of nature and society that you started for.

The perfection of undertakings in this line was Mrs. Merriam's famous walking party in the Green Mountains, with the Wadsworth girls. Wadsworth was not their name,—it was the name of her school. She chose eight of the girls when vacation came, and told them they might get



How to Travel

123

leave, if they could, to join her in Brattleborough for this tramp. And she sent her own invitation to the mothers and to as many brothers. Six of the girls came. Clara Ingham was one of them, and she told me all about it. Maud Ingletree and Esther were there. There were six brothers also and Archie Muldair and his wife, Fanny Muldair's mother. They two "tended out" in a buggy, but did not do much walking. Mr. Merriam was with them, and, quite as a surprise, they had Thurlessen, a nice old Swede, who had served in the army, and had ever since been attached to that school as chore-man. At home he blacked the girls' shoes, waited for them at concert, and sometimes, for a slight bribe, bought almond candy for them in school hours, when they could not possibly live till afternoon without a supply. The girls said that the reason the war lasted so long was that Old Thurlessen was in the army, and that nothing ever went quick when he was in it. I believe there was something in this. Well, Old Thurlessen had a canvas-top wagon, in which he carried five tents, five or six trunks, one or two pieces of kitchen gear, his own self, and Will Corcoran.

The girls and boys did not so much as know that Thurlessen was in the party. That had all been kept a solemn secret. They did not know how their trunks were going on, but started on foot in the morning from the hotel, passed up that beautiful village street in Brattleborough, came

out through West Dummerston, and so along that lovely West River. It was very easy to find a camp there, and when the sun came to be a little hot, and they had all blown off a little of the steam of the morning, I think they were all glad to come upon Mr. Muldair, sitting in the wagon waiting for them. He explained to them that, if they would cross the fence and go down to the river, they would find his wife had planted herself; and there, sure enough, in a lovely little nook, round which the river swept, with rocks and trees for shade, with shawls to lounge upon, and the water to play with, they spent the day. Of course they made long excursions into the woods and up and down the stream, but here was headquarters. Hard-boiled eggs from the haversacks, with bread and butter, furnished forth the meal, and Mr. Muldair insisted on toasting some salt-pork over the fire, and teaching the girls to like it sandwiched between crackers. Well, at four o'clock everybody was ready to start again, and was willing to walk briskly. And at six, what should they see but the American flag flying, and Thurlessen's pretty little encampment of his five tents, pitched in a horseshoe form, with his wagon, as a sort of commissary's tent, just outside. Two tents were for the girls, two tents for the boys, and the headquarters tent for Mr. and Mrs. Merriam. And that night they all learned the luxury and sweetness of sleeping upon beds of hemlock branches. Thurlessen had supper all ready as



How to Travel

125

soon as they were washed and ready for it. And after supper they sat round the fire a little while singing. But before nine o'clock every one of them was asleep.

So they fared up and down through those lovely valleys of the Green Mountains, sending Thurlessen on about ten miles every day, to be ready for them when night came. If it rained, of course they could put in to some of those hospitable Vermont farmers' homes, or one of the inns in the villages. But, on the whole, they had good weather, and boys and girls always hoped that they might sleep out-doors.

These are, however, but the variations and amusements of travel. You and I would find it hard to walk to Liverpool, if that happened to be the expedition in hand or on foot. And in ninety-nine cases out of a hundred you and I will have to adapt ourselves to the methods of travel which the majority have agreed upon.

But for pleasure travel, in whatever form, much of what has been said already applies. The best party is two, the next best four, the next best one, and the worst three. Beyond four, except in walking parties, all are impossible, unless they be members of one family under the command of a father or mother. Command is essential when you pass four. All the members of the party should have or should make a community of interests. If one draws, all had best draw. If one likes to climb mountains, all had best climb mountains.

If one rises early, all had best rise early; and so on. Do not tell me you cannot draw. It is quite time you did. You are your own best teacher. And there is no time or place so fit for learning as when you are sitting under the shade of a high rock on the side of Whiteface, or looking off into the village street from the piazza of a hotel.

The party once determined on and the route, remember that the old conditions of travel and the new conditions of most travel of to-day are precisely opposite. For in old travel, as on horseback or on foot now, you saw the country while you travelled. Many of your stopping-places were for rest, or because night had fallen, and you could see nothing at night. Under the old system, therefore, an intelligent traveller might keep in motion from day to day, slowly, indeed, but seeing something all the time, and learning what the country was through which he passed by talk with the people. But in the new system, popularly called the improved system, he is shut up with his party and a good many other parties in a tight box with glass windows, and whirled on through dust if it be dusty, or rain if it be rainy, under arrangements which make it impossible to converse with the people of the country, and almost impossible to see what that country is. There is a little conversation with the natives. But it relates mostly to the price of pond-lilies or of crullers or of native diamonds. I once put



How to Travel

127

my head out of a window in Ashland, and, addressing a crowd of boys promiscuously, called "John, John." John stepped forward, as I had felt sure he would, though I had not before had the pleasure of his acquaintance. I asked how his mother was, and how the other children were, and he said they were very well. But he did not say anything else, and as the train started at that moment I was not able to continue the conversation, which was at the best, you see, conducted under difficulties.

All this makes it necessary that, in our modern travelling, you select with particular care your places to rest, and when you have selected them, that you stay in them, at the least one day, that you may rest, and that you may know something of the country you are passing. A man or a strong woman may go from Boston to Chicago in a little more than twenty-five hours. If he be going because he has to, it is best for him to go in that way, because he is out of his misery the sooner. Just so it is better to be beheaded than to be starved to death. But a party going from Boston to Chicago purely on an expedition of pleasure, ought not to advance more than a hundred miles a day, and might well spend twenty hours out of every twenty-four at well-chosen stopping-places on the way. They would avoid all large cities, which are for a short stay exactly alike and equally uncomfortable; they would choose pleasant places for rest, and thus when they arrived at

Chicago they would have a real fund of happy, pleasant memories.

Applying the same principle to travel in Europe, I am eager to correct a mistake which many of you will be apt to make at the beginning, — hot-blooded young Americans as you are, eager to “put through” what you are at, even though it be the most exquisite of enjoyments, and ignorant as you all are, till you are taught, of the possibilities of happy life before you, if you will only let the luscious pulp of your various bananas lie on your tongue and take all the good of it, instead of bolting life as if it were nauseous medicine. Because you have but little time in Europe, you will be anxious to see all you can. That is quite right. Remember, then, that true wisdom is to stay three days in one place, rather than to spend but one day in each of three. If you insist on one day in Oxford, one in Birmingham, one in Bristol, why then there are three inns or hotels to be hunted up, three packings and unpackings, three sets of letters to be presented, three sets of streets to learn, and, after it is all over, your memories of those three places will be merely of the outside misery of travel. Give up two of them altogether, then. Make yourself at home for the three days in whichever place of the three best pleases you. Sleep till your nine hours are up every night. Breakfast all together. Avail yourselves of your letters of introduction. See things which are to be seen, or persons who are to be



How to Travel

129

known, at the right times. Above all, see twice whatever is worth seeing. Do not forget this rule; — we remember what we see twice. It is that stereoscopic memory of which I told you before. We do not remember with anything like the same reality or precision what we have only seen once. It is in some slight appreciation of this great fundamental rule, that you stay three days in any place which you really mean to be acquainted with, that Miss Ferrier lays down her bright rule for a visit, that a visit ought “to consist of three days, — the rest day, the drest day, and the pressed day.”

And, lastly, dear friends, — for the most entertaining of discourses on the most fascinating of themes must have a “lastly,” — lastly, be sure that you know what you travel for. “Why, we travel to have a good time,” says that incorrigible Pauline Ingham, who will talk none but the Yankee language. Dear Pauline, if you go about the world expecting to find that same “good time” of yours ready-made, inspected, branded, stamped, jobbed by the jobbers, retailed by the retailers, and ready for you to buy with your spending-money, you will be sadly mistaken, though you have for spending-money all that united health, high spirits, good-nature, and kind heart of yours, and all papa’s lessons of forgetting yesterday, leaving to-morrow alone, and living with all your might to-day. It will never do, Pauline, to have to walk up to the innkeeper and

say, "Please, we have come for a good time, and where shall we find it?" Take care that you have in reserve one object, I do not care much what it is. Be ready to press plants, or be ready to collect minerals. Or be ready to wash in water-colors, I do not care how poor they are. Or, in Europe, be ready to inquire about the libraries, or the baby-nurseries, or the art-collections, or the botanical gardens. Understand in your own mind that there is something you can inquire for and be interested in, though you be dumped out of a car at New Smithville. It may, perhaps, happen that you do not for weeks or months revert to this reserved object of yours. Then happiness may come; for, as you have found out already, I think, *happiness* is something which *happens*, and is not contrived. On this theme you will find an excellent discourse in the beginning of Mr. Freeman Clarke's "Eleven Weeks in Europe."

For directions for the detail of travel, there are none better than those in the beginning of "Rollo in Europe." There is much wisdom in the general directions to travellers in the prefaces to the old editions of Murray. A young American will of course eliminate the purely English necessities from both sides of those equations. There is a good article by Dr. Bellows on the matter in the *North American Review*. And you yourself, after you have been forty-eight hours in Europe, will feel certain that you can write better directions than all the rest of us can, put together.



How to Travel 131

And, so my dear young friends, the first half of this book comes to an end. The programme of the beginning is finished, and I am to say "Good-by." If I have not answered all the nice, intelligent letters which one and another of you have sent me since we began together, it has only been because I thought I could better answer the multitude of such unknown friends in print, than a few in shorter notes of reply. It has been to me a charming thing that so many of you have been tempted to break through the magic circle of the printed pages, and come to closer terms with one who has certainly tried to speak as a friend to all of you. Do we all understand that in talking, in reading, in writing, in going into society, in choosing our books, or in travelling, there is no arbitrary set of rules? The commandments are not carved in stone. We shall do these things rightly if we do them simply and unconsciously, if we are not selfish, if we are willing to profit by other people's experience, and if, as we do them, we can manage to remember that right and wrong depend much more on the spirit than on the manner in which the thing is done. We shall not make many blunders if we live by the four rules they painted on the four walls of the Detroit Club-house.

Do not you know what those were?

1. Look up, and not down.
2. Look forward, and not backward.
3. Look out, and not in.
4. Lend a hand.

The next half of the book will be the application of these rules to life in school, in vacation, life together, life alone, and some other details not yet touched upon.

CHAPTER IX

LIFE AT SCHOOL

I DO not mean life at a boarding-school. If I speak of that, it is to be at another time. No, I mean life at a regular every-day school, in town or in the country, where you go in the morning and come away at eleven or at noon, and go again in the afternoon and come away after two or three hours. Some young people hate this life, and some like it tolerably well. I propose to give some information which shall make it more agreeable all round.

And I beg it may be understood that I do not appear as counsel for either party, in the instruction and advice I give. That means that, as the lawyers say, I am not retained by the teachers, formerly called schoolmistresses and schoolmasters, or by the pupils, formerly called boys and girls. I have been a schoolmaster myself, and I enjoyed the life very much, and made among my boys some of the best of the friends of my life. I have also been a school-boy,—and I roughed through my school life with comparative comfort and ease. As master and as boy I learned



Life at School

133

some things which I think can be explained to boys and girls now, so as to make life at school easier and really more agreeable.

My first rule is, that you

ACCEPT THE SITUATION.

Perhaps you do not know what that means. It means that, as you are at school, whether you really like going or not, you determine to make the very best you can of it, and that you do not make yourself and everybody else wretched by sulking and grumbling about it, and wishing school was done, and wondering why your father sends you there, and asking leave to look at the clock in the other room, and so on.

When Dr. Kane or Captain McClure was lying on a skin on a field of ice, in a blanket bag buttoned over his head, with three men one side of him and three the other, and a blanket over them all, — with the temperature seventy-eight degrees below zero, and daylight a month and a half away, the position was by no means comfortable. But a brave man does not growl or sulk in such a position. He “accepts the situation.” That is, he takes that as a thing for granted, about which there is to be no further question. Then he is in condition to make the best of it, whatever that best may be. He can sing “We won’t go home till morning,” or he can tell the men the story of William Fitzpatrick and the Belgian coffee-grinder, or he can say “good-night” and imagine himself

among the Kentish hop-fields,—till before he knows it the hop-sticks begin walking round and round, and the haycocks to make faces at him,—and —and — and — he — he — he is fast asleep. That comfort comes of “accepting the situation.”

Now here you are at school, I will say, for three hours. Accept the situation like a man or a woman, and do not sulk like a fool. As Mr. Abbott says, in his admirable rule, in *Rollo* or *Jonas*, “When you grant, grant cheerfully.” You have come here to school without a fight, I suppose. When your father told you to come, you did not insult him, as people do in very poor plays and very cheap novels. You did not say to him, “Miscreant and villain, I renounce thee, I defy thee to the teeth; I am none of thine, and henceforth I leave thee in thy low estate.” You did not leap in the middle of the night from a three-story window, with your best clothes in a handkerchief, and go and assume the charge of a pirate clipper, which was lying hidden in a creek in the Back Bay. On the contrary, you went to school when the time came. As you have done so, determine, first of all, to make the very best of it. The best can be made first-rate. But a great deal depends on you in making it so.

To make the whole thing thoroughly attractive, to make the time pass quickly, and to have school life a natural part of your other life, my second rule is,

DO WHAT YOU DO WITH ALL YOUR MIGHT.



Life at School

135

It is a good rule in anything; in sleeping, in playing, or in whatever you have in hand. But nothing tends to make school time pass quicker; and the great point, as I will acknowledge, is to get through with the school hours as quickly as we fairly can.

Now, if in written arithmetic, for instance, you will start instantly on the sums as soon as they are given out; if you will bear on hard on the pencil, so as to make clear white marks, instead of greasy, flabby pale ones on the slate; if you will rule the columns for the answers as carefully as if it were a bank ledger you were ruling, or if you will wash the slate so completely that no vestige of old work is there, you will find that the mere exercise of energy of manner infuses spirit and correctness into the thing done.

I remember my drawing-teacher once snapped the top of my pencil with his forefinger, gently, and it flew across the room. He laughed and said, "How can you expect to draw a firm line with a pencil held like that?" It was a good lesson, and it illustrates this rule, — "Do with all your might the work that is to be done."

When I was at school at the old Latin School in Boston, — opposite where Ben Franklin went to school and where his statue is now, — in the same spot in space where you eat your lunch if you go into the ladies' eating-room at Parker's Hotel, — when I was at school there, I say, things were in that semi-barbarous state that with a school

attendance of four hours in the morning and three in the afternoon, we had but five minutes' recess in the morning and five in the afternoon. We went "out" in divisions of eight or ten each; and the worst of all was that the playground (now called so) was a sort of platform, of which one half was under cover, — all of which was, I suppose, sixteen feet long by six wide, with high walls, and stairs leading to it.

Of course we could have sulked away all our recess there, complaining that we had no better place. Instead of which, we accepted the situation, we made the best of it, and with all our might entered on the one amusement possible in such quarters.

We provided a stout rope, well knotted. As soon as recess began, we divided into equal parties, one under cover and the other out, grasping the rope, and endeavoring each to draw the other party across the dividing line. "Greeks and Trojans" you will see the game called in English books. Little we knew of either; but we hardened our hands, toughened our muscles, and exercised our chests, arms, and legs much better than could have been expected, all by accepting the situation and doing with all our might what our hands found to do.

Lessons are set for average boys at school, — boys of the average laziness. If you really go to work with all your might then, you get a good deal of loose time, which, in general, you can ap-



Life at School

137

ply to that standing nuisance the "evening lesson." Sometimes, I know, for what reason I do not know, this study of the evening lesson in school is prohibited. When it is, the good boys and quick boys have to learn how to waste their extra time, which seems to be a pity. But with a sensible master, it is a thing understood, that it is better for boys or girls to study hard while they study, and never to learn to dawdle. Taking it for granted that you are in the hands of such masters or mistresses, I will take it for granted that, when you have learned the school lesson, there will be no objection to your next learning the other lesson, which lazier boys will have to carry home.

• Lastly, you will find you gain a great deal by giving to the school lesson all the color and light which every-day affairs can lend to it. Do not let it be a ghastly skeleton in a closet, but let it come as far as it will into daily life. When you read in Colburn's Oral Arithmetic, "that a man bought mutton at six cents a pound, and beef at seven," ask your mother what she pays a pound now, and do the sum with the figures changed. When the boys come back after vacation, find out where they have been, and look out Springfield, and the Notch, and Dead River, and Moosehead Lake, on the map, — and know where they are. When you get a chance at the *Republican* before the others have come down to breakfast, read the Vermont news, under the separate head of that State, and find out how many of those Vermont towns are on your

"Mitchell." When it is your turn to speak, do not be satisfied with a piece from the "Speaker," that all the boys have heard a hundred times; but get something out of the *Tribune*, or the *Companion*, or *Young Folks*, or from the new "Tennyson" at home.

I once went to examine a high school, on a lonely hillside in a lonely country town. The first class was in botany, and they rattled off from the book very fast. They said "cotyledon," and "syngenesious," and "coniferous," and such words, remarkably well, considering they did not care two straws about them. Well, when it was my turn to "make a few remarks," I said, —

"HUCKLEBERRY."

I do not remember another word I said, but I do remember the sense of amazement that a minister should have spoken such a wicked word in a school-room. What was worse, I sent a child out to bring in some unripe huckleberries from the roadside, and we went to work on our botany to some purpose.

My dear children, I see hundreds of boys who can tell me what is thirteen seventeenths of two elevenths of five times one half of a bushel of wheat, stated in pecks, quarts, and pints; and yet if I showed them a grain of wheat and a grain of unhulled rice and a grain of barley, they would not know which was which. Try not to let your school life sweep you wholly away from the home life of every day.



CHAPTER X

LIFE IN VACATION

How well I remember my last vacation! I knew it was my last, and I did not lose one instant of it. Six weeks of unalloyed!

True, after school days are over, people have what are called vacations. Your father takes his at the store, and Uncle William has the "long vacation," when the Court does not sit. But a man's vacation, or a woman's, is as nothing when it is compared with a child's or a young man's or a young woman's home from school. For papa and Uncle William are carrying about a set of cares with them all the time. They cannot help it, and they carry them bravely, but they carry them all the same. So you see a vacation for men and women is generally a vacation with its weight of responsibility. But your vacations, while you are at school, though they have their responsibilities, indeed, have none under which you ought not to walk off as cheerfully as Gretchen, there, walks down the road with that pail of milk upon her head. I hope you will learn to do that some day, my dear Fanchon.

Hear, then, the essential laws of vacation: —

First of all,

DO NOT GET INTO OTHER PEOPLE'S WAY.

Horace and Enoch would not have made such a mess of it last summer, and got so utterly into disgrace, if they could only have kept this rule in mind. But, from mere thoughtlessness, they were making people wish they were at the North Pole all the time, and it ended in their wishing that they were there themselves.

Thus, the very first morning after they had come home from Leicester Academy, — and, indeed, they had been welcomed with all the honors only the night before, — when Margaret, the servant, came down into the kitchen, she found her fire lighted, indeed, but there were no thanks to Master Enoch for that. The boys were going out gunning that morning, and they had taken it into their heads that the two old fowling-pieces needed to be thoroughly washed out, and with hot water. So they had got up, really at half-past four; had made the kitchen fire themselves; had put on ten times as much water as they wanted, so it took an age to boil; had got tired waiting, and raked out some coals and put on some more water in a skillet; had upset this over the hearth, and tried to wipe it up with the cloth that lay over Margaret's bread-cakes as they were rising; had meanwhile taken the guns to pieces, and laid the pieces on the kitchen table; had piled up their oily cloths on the settle and on the chairs; had spilled oil from the lamp-filler, in trying to drop some into one of the ramrod sockets, and thus, by the time Margaret did come down, her kitchen and her breakfast both were in a very bad way.



Life in Vacation

141

Horace said, when he was arraigned, that he had thought they should be all through before half past-five; that then they would have "cleared up," and have been well across the pasture, out of Margaret's way. Horace did not know that watched pots are "mighty unsartin" in their times of boiling.

Now all this row, leading to great unpopularity of the boys in regions where they wanted to be conciliatory, would have been avoided if Horace and Enoch had merely kept out of the way. There were the Kendal-house in the back-yard, or the wood-shed, where they could have cleaned the guns, and then nobody would have minded if they had spilled ten quarts of water.

This seems like a minor rule. But I have put it first, because a good deal of comfort or discomfort hangs on it.

Scientifically, the first rule would be,

SAVE TIME.

This can only be done by system. A vacation is gold, you see, if properly used; it is distilled gold, — if there could be such, — to be correct, it is burnished, double-refined gold, or gold purified. It cannot be lengthened. There is sure to be too little of it. So you must make sure of all there is; and this requires system.

It requires, therefore, that, first of all, — even before the term time is over, — you all determine very solemnly what the great central busi-

ness of the vacation shall be. Shall it be an archery club? Or will we build the Falcon's Nest in the buttonwood over on the Strail? Or shall it be some other sport or entertainment?

Let this be decided with great care; and, once decided, hang to this determination, doing something determined about it every living day. In truth, I recommend application to that business with a good deal of firmness, on every day, rain or shine, even at certain fixed hours; unless, of course, there is some general engagement of the family or of the neighborhood which interferes. If you are all going on a lily party, why, that will take precedence.

Then I recommend that, quite distinct from this, you make up your own personal and separate mind as to what is the thing which you yourself have most hungered and thirsted for in the last term, but have not been able to do to your mind, because the school work interfered so badly. Some such thing, I have no doubt, there is. You wanted to make some electrotype medals, as good as that first-rate one that Muldair copied when he lived in Paxton. Or you want to make some plaster casts. Or you want to read some particular book or books. Or you want to use John's tool-box for some very definite and attractive purpose. Very well; take this up also, for your individual or special business. The other is the business of the crowd; this is your avocation when you are away from the crowd. I say away; I



Life in Vacation 143

mean it is something you can do without having to hunt them up, and coax them to go on with you.

Besides these, of course there is all the home life. You have the garden to work in. You can help your mother wash the tea things. You can make cake, if you keep on the blind side of old Rosamond; and so on.

Thus you are triply armed. Indeed, I know no life which gets on well, unless it has these three sides, whether life with the others, life by yourself, or such life as may come without any plan or effort of your own.

No; I do not know which of these things you will choose, — perhaps you will choose none of them. But it is easy enough to see how fast a day of vacation will go by if you, Stephen, or you, Clara, have these several resources or determinations.

Here is the ground-plan of it, as I might steal it from Fanchon's journals: —

"TUESDAY. — Second day of vacation. Fair. Wind west. Thermometer sixty-three degrees, before breakfast.

"Downstairs in time." [*Mem.* 1. Be careful about this. It makes much more disturbance in the household than you think for, if you are late to breakfast, and it sets back the day terribly.]

"Wiped while Sarah washed. Herbert read us the new number of *Tig and Tag*, while we did this, and made us scream, by acting it with Silas, behind the

sofa and on the chairs. At nine, all was done, and we went up the pasture to Mont Blanc. Worked all the morning on the drawbridge. We have got the two large logs into place, and have dug out part of the trench. Home at one, quite tired."

[*Mem.* 2. Mont Blanc is a great boulder, — part of a park of boulders, in the edge of the wood-lot. Other similar rocks are named the "Jungfrau," because unclimbable, the "Aiguilles," &c. This about the drawbridge and logs, readers will understand as well as I do.]

"Had just time to dress for dinner. Mr. Links, or Lynch, was here; a *very interesting* man, who has descended an extinct volcano. He is going to give me some Pele's hair. I think I shall make a museum. After dinner we all sat on the piazza some time, till he went away. Then I came up here, and fixed my drawers. I have moved my bed to the other side of the chamber. This gives me a *great deal more room*. Then I got out my palette, and washed it, and my colors. I am going to paint a cluster of grape-leaves for mamma's birthday. It is a *great secret*. I had only got the things well out, when the Fosdicks came and proposed we should all ride over with them to Worcester, where Houdin the juggler was. Such a splendid time as we have had! How he does some of the things I do not know. I brought home a flag and three great peppermints for Pet. We did not get home *till nearly eleven*."

[*Mem.* 3. This is pretty late for young people of your age; but, as Madame Roland said, a good deal has to be pardoned to the spirit of liberty; and, so far as I have observed, in this time, generally is.]



Life Alone

145

Now, if you will analyze that bit of journal, you will see, first, that the day is full of what Mr. Clough calls

“The joy of eventful living.”

That girl never will give anybody cause to say she is tired of her vacations, if she can spend them in that fashion. You will see, next, that it is all in system, and, as it happens, just on the system I proposed. For you will observe that there is the great plan, with others, of the fortress, the draw-bridge, and all that; there is the separate plan for Fanchon's self, of the water-color picture; and, lastly, there is the unplanned surrender to the accident of the Fosdicks coming round to propose Houdin.

Will you observe, lastly, that Fanchon is not selfish in these matters, but lends a hand where she finds an opportunity?

CHAPTER XI

LIFE ALONE

WHEN I was a very young man, I had occasion to travel two hundred miles down the valley of the Connecticut River. I had just finished a delightful summer excursion in the service of the State of New Hampshire as a geologist, and I left the other geological surveyors at Haverhill.

I remembered John Ledyard. Do you, dear Young America? John Ledyard, having determined to leave Dartmouth College, built himself a boat, or digged for himself a canoe, and sailed down on the stream reading the Greek Testament, or "Plutarch's Lives," I forget which, on the way.

Here was I, about to go down the same river. I had ten dollars in my pocket, be the same more or less. Could not I buy a boat for seven, my provant for a week for three more, and so arrive in Springfield in ten days' time, go up to the Hardings' and spend the night, and go down to Boston, on a free pass I had, the next day?

Had I been as young as I am now, I should have done that thing. I wanted to do it then, but there were difficulties.

First, whatever was to be done must be done at once. For, if I were delayed only a day at Haverhill, I should have, when I had paid my bill, but eight dollars and a half left. Then how buy the provant for three dollars, and the boat for six?

So I went at once to the seaport or maritime district of that flourishing town, to find, to my dismay, that there was no boat, canoe, dug-out, or *bateau*,—there was nothing. As I remember things now, there was not any sort of coffin that would ride the waves in any sort of way.

There were, however, many pundits, or learned men. They are a class of people I have always found in places or occasions where something



besides learning was needed. They tried, as is the fashion of their craft, to make good the lack of boats by advice.

First, they proved that it would have been of no use had there been any boats. Second, they proved that no one ever had gone down from Haverhill in a boat at that season of the year, — *ergo*, that no one ought to think of going. Third, they proved, what I knew very well before, that I could go down much quicker in the stage. Fourth, with astonishing unanimity they agreed, that, if I would only go down as far as Hanover, there would be plenty of boats; the river would have more water in it; I should be past this fall and that fall, this rapid and that rapid; and, in short, that, before the worlds were, it seemed predestined that I should start from Hanover.

All this they said in that seductive way in which a dry-goods clerk tells you that he has no checked gingham, and makes you think you are a fool that you asked for checked gingham; that you never should have asked, least of all, should have asked him.

So I left the beach at Haverhill, disconcerted, disgraced, conscious of my own littleness and folly, and, as I was bid, took passage in the Telegraph coach for Hanover, giving orders that I should be called in the morning.

I was called in the morning. I mounted the stage-coach, and I think we came to Hanover about half-past ten, — my first and last visit at that

shrine of learning. Pretty hot it was on the top of the coach, and I was pretty tired, and a good deal chafed as I saw from that eery the lovely, cool river all the way at my side. I took some courage when I saw White's dam and Brown's dam, or Smith's dam and Jones's dam, or whatever the dams were, and persuaded myself that it would have been hard work hauling round them.

Nathless, I was worn and weary when I arrived at Hanover, and was told there would be an hour before the Telegraph went forward. Again I hurried to the strand.

This time I found a boat. A poor craft it was, but probably as good as Ledyard's. Leaky, but could be calked. Destitute of row-locks, but they could be made.

I found the owner. Yes, he would sell her to me. Nay, he was not particular about price. Perhaps he knew that she was not worth anything. But, with that loyalty to truth, not to say pride of opinion, which is a part of the true New-Englander's life, this sturdy man said, frankly, that he did not want to sell her, because he did not think I ought to go that way.

Vain for me to represent that that was my affair, and not his.

Clearly he thought it was his. Did he think I was a boy who had escaped from parental care?

Perhaps. For at that age I had not this mustache or these whiskers.

Had he, in the Laccadive Islands, some worth-



Life Alone

149

less son who had escaped from home to go a whaling? Did he wish in his heart that some other shipmaster had hindered him, as he now was hindering me? Alas, I know not! Only this I know, that he advised me, argued with me, nay, begged me not to go that way. I should get aground. I should be upset. The boat would be swamped. Much better go by the Telegraph.

Dear reader, I was young in life, and I accepted the reiterated advice, and took the Telegraph. It was one of about four prudent things which I have done in my life, which I can remember now, all of which I regret at this moment.

Now, why did I give up a plan, at the solicitation of an utter stranger, which I had formed intelligently, and had looked forward to with pleasure? Was I afraid of being drowned? Not I. Hard to drown in the upper Connecticut the boy who had for weeks been swimming three times a day in that river and in every lake or stream in upper or central New Hampshire. Was I afraid of wetting my clothes? Not I. Hard to hurt with water the clothes in which I had slept on the top of Mt. Washington, swam the Ammonoosuc, or sat out a thunder-shower on Mt. Jefferson.

Dear boys and girls, I was, by this time, afraid of myself. I was afraid of being alone.

This is a pretty long text. But it is the text for this paper. You see I had had this four or five hours' pull down on the hot stage-coach. I

had been conversing with myself all the time, and I had not found it the best of company. I was quite sure that the voyage would cost a week. Maybe it would cost more. And I was afraid that I should be very tired of it and of myself before the thing was done. So I meekly returned to the Telegraph, faintly tried the same experiment at Windsor for the last time, and then took the Telegraph for the night, and brought up next day at Greenfield.

Can I, perhaps, give some hints to you, boys and girls, which will save you from such a mistake as I made then?

I do not pretend that you should court solitude. That is all nonsense, though there is a good deal of it in the books, as there is of other nonsense. You are made for society, for converse, sympathy, and communion. Tongues are made to talk, and ears are made to listen. So are eyes made to see. Yet night falls sometimes, when you cannot see. And, as you ought not to be afraid of night, you ought not to be afraid of solitude, when you cannot talk or listen.

What is there, then, that we can do when we are alone?

Many things. Of which now it will be enough to speak a little in detail of five. We can think, we can read, we can write, we can draw, we can sing. Of these we will speak separately. Of the rest I will say a word, and hardly more.

First, we can think. And there are some places



Life Alone

151

where we can do nothing else. In a railway carriage, for instance, on a rainy or a frosty day, you cannot see the country. If you are without companions, you cannot talk, — ought not, indeed, talk much, if you had them. You ought not read, because reading in the train puts your eyes out, sooner or later. You cannot write. And in most trains the usages are such that you cannot sing. Or, when they sing in trains, the whole company generally sings, so that rules for solitude no longer apply.

What can you do, then? You can think. Learn to think carefully, regularly, so as to think with pleasure.

I know some young people who had two or three separate imaginary lives, which they took up on such occasions. One was a supposed life in the Shenandoah Valley in Virginia. Robert used to plan the whole house and grounds; just what horses he would keep, what hounds, what cows, and other stock. He planned all the neighbors' houses, and who should live in them. There were the Fairfaxes, very nice, but rather secesh; and the Sydneys, who had been loyal through and through. There was that plucky Frank Fairfax, and that pretty Blanche Sydney. Then there were riding parties, archery parties, picnics on the river, expeditions to the Natural Bridge, and once a year a regular "meet" for a fox-hunt.

"Springfield, twenty-five minutes for refresh-

ments," says the conductor, and Robert is left to take up his history some other time.

It is a very good plan to have not simply stories on hand, as he had, but to be ready to take up the way to plan your garden, the arrangement of your books, the order of next year's Reading Club, or any other truly good subjects which have been laid by for systematic thinking, the first time you are alone. Bear this in mind as you read. If you had been General Sullivan, at the battle of Brandywine, you are not quite certain whether you would have done as he did. No? Well, then, keep that for a nut to crack the first time you have to be alone. What would you have done?

This matter of being prepared to think is really a pretty important matter, if you find some night that you have to watch with a sick friend. You must not read, write, or talk there. But you must keep awake. Unless you mean to have the time pass dismally slow, you must have your regular topics to think over, carefully and squarely.

An imaginary conversation, such as Madame de Genlis describes, is an excellent resource at such a time.

Many and many a time, as I have been grinding along at night on some railway in the Middle States, when it was too early to sleep, and too late to look at the scenery, have I called into imaginary council a circle of the nicest people in the world.



Life Alone

153

"Let me suppose," I would say to myself, "that we were all at Mrs. Tileston's in the front parlor, where the light falls so beautifully on the laughing face and shoulder of that Bacchante. Let me suppose that besides Mrs. Tileston, Edith was there, and Emily and Carrie and Haliburton and Fred. Suppose just then the door-bell rang, and Mr. Charles Sumner came upstairs fresh from Washington. What should we all say and do?"

"Why, of course we should be glad to see him, and we should ask him about Washington and the Session, — what sort of a person Lady Bruce was, — and whether it was really true that General Butler said that bright thing about the Governor of Arkansas.

"And Mr. Sumner would say that General Butler said a much better thing than that. He said that m-m-m-m-m—

"Then Mrs. Tileston would say, 'Oh, I thought that s-s-s-s-s—'

"Then I should say, 'Oh no! I am sure that u-u-u-u—, &c.'

"Then Edith would laugh and say, 'Why, no, Mr. Hale. I am sure that, &c., &c., &c., &c.'"

You will find that the carrying out an imaginary conversation, where you really fill these blanks, and make the remarks of the different people in character, is a very good entertainment, — what we called very good fun when you and I were at school, — and helps along the hours of your watching or of your travel greatly.

Second, as I said, there is reading. Now I have already gone into some detail in this matter. But under the head of solitude, this is to be added, that one is often alone, when he can read. And books, of course, are such a luxury. But do you know that if you expect to be alone, you had better take with you only books enough, and not too many? It is an "embarrassment of riches," sometimes, to find yourself with too many books. You are tempted to lay down one and take up another; you are tempted to skip and skim too much, so that you really get the good of none of them.

There is no time so good as the forced stopping-places of travel for reading up the hard, heavy reading which must be done, but which nobody wants to do. Here, for two years, I have been trying to make you read Gibbon, and you would not touch it at home. But if I had you in the mission-house at Mackinaw, waiting for days for a steamboat, and you had finished "Blood and Thunder," and "Sighs and Tears," and then found a copy of Gibbon in the house, I think you would go through half of it, at least, before the steamer came.

Walter Savage Landor used to keep five books, and only five, by him, I have heard it said. When he had finished one of these, and finished it completely, he gave it away, and bought another. I do not recommend that, but I do recommend the principle of thorough reading on which it is



Life Alone

155

founded. Do not be fiddling over too many books at one time.

Third, "But, my dear Mr. Hale, I get so tired, sometimes, of reading." Of course you do. Who does not? I never knew anybody who did not tire of reading sooner or later. But you are alone, as we suppose. Then be all ready to write. Take care that your inkstand is filled as regularly as the wash-pitcher on your washstand. Take care that there are pens and blotting-paper, and everything that you need. These should be looked to every day, with the same care with which every other arrangement of your room is made. When I come to make you that long-promised visit, and say to you, before my trunk is open, "I want to write a note, Blanche," be all ready at the instant. Do not have to put a little water into the inkstand, and to run down to papa's office for some blotting-paper, and get the key to mamma's desk for some paper. Be ready to write for your life, at any moment, as Walter, there, is ready to ride for his.

"Dear me! Mr. Hale, I hate to write. What shall I say?"

Do not say what Mr. Hale has told you, whatever else you do. Say what you yourself may want to see hereafter. The chances are very small that anybody else, save some dear friend, will want to see what you write.

But, of course, your journal, and especially your letters, are matters always new, for which the day

itself gives plenty of subjects, and these two are an admirable regular resort when you are alone.

As to drawing, no one can have a better drawing-teacher than himself. Remember that. And whoever can learn to write can learn to draw. Of all the boys who have ever entered at the Worcester Technical School, it has proved that all could draw, and I think the same is true at West Point. Keep your drawings, not to show to other people, but to show yourself whether you are improving. And thank me, ten years hence, that I advised you to do so.

You do not expect me to go into detail as to the method in which you can teach yourself. This is, however, sure. If you will determine to learn to see things truly, you will begin to draw them truly. It is, for instance, almost never that the wheel of a carriage really is round to your eye. It is round to your thought. But unless your eye is exactly opposite the hub of the wheel in the line of the axle, the wheel does not make a circle on the retina of your eye, and ought not to be represented by a circle in your drawing. To draw well, the first resolution and the first duty is to see well. Second, do not suppose that mere technical method has much to do with real success. Soft pencil rather than hard; sepia rather than India ink. Yes: but it is pure truth that tells in drawing, and that is what you can gain. Take perfectly simple objects, at a little distance, to begin with. Yes, the gate-posts at the garden



Habits in Church 157

gate are as good as anything. Draw the outline as accurately as you can, but remember there is no outline in nature, and that the outline in drawing is simply conventional; represent—which means present again, or re-present—the shadows as well as you can. Notice,—is the shadow under the cap of the post deeper than that of the side? Then let it be re-presented so on your paper. Do this honestly, as well as you can. Keep it to compare with what you do next week or next month. And if you have a chance to see a good draughtsman work, quietly watch him, and remember. Do not hurry, nor try hard things at the beginning. Above all, do not begin with large landscapes.

As for singing, there is nothing that so lights up a whole house as the strain, through the open windows, of some one who is singing alone. We feel sure, then, that there is at least one person in that house who is well and is happy.

CHAPTER XII

HABITS IN CHURCH

PERHAPS I can fill a gap, if I say something to young people about their habits in church-going, and in spending the hour of the church service.

When I was a boy, we went to school on week-days for four hours in the morning and three in

the afternoon. We went to church on Sunday at about half-past ten, and church "let out" at twelve. We went again in the afternoon, and the service was a little shorter. I knew and know precisely how much shorter, for I sat in sight of the clock, and bestowed a great deal too much attention on it. But I do not propose to tell you that.

Till I was taught some of the things which I now propose to teach you, this hour and a half in church seemed to me to correspond precisely to the four hours in school,—I mean it seemed just as long. The hour and twenty minutes of the afternoon seemed to me to correspond precisely with the three hours of afternoon school. After I learned some of these things, church-going seemed to me very natural and simple, and the time I spent there was very short and very pleasant to me.

I should say, then, that there are a great many reasonably good boys and girls, reasonably thoughtful, also, who find the confinement of a pew oppressive, merely because they do not know the best way to get the advantage of a service, which is really of profit to children as it is to grown-up people, and which never has its full value as it does when children and grown people join together in it.

Now, to any young people who are reading this paper, and are thinking about their own habits in church, I should say very much what I should about swimming, or drawing, or gardening; that,



Habits in Church 159

if the thing to be done is worth doing at all, you want to do it with your very best power. You want to give yourself up to it, and get the very utmost from it.

You go to church, I will suppose, twice a day on Sunday. Is it not clearly best, then, to carry out to the very best the purpose with which you are there? You are there to worship God. Steadily and simply determine that you will worship him, and you will not let such trifles distract you as often do distract people from this purpose.

What if the door does creak? what if a dog does bark near by? what if the horses outside do neigh or stamp? You do not mean to confess that you, a child of God, are going to submit to dogs, or horses, or creaking doors!

If you will give yourself to the service with all your heart and soul, — with all your might, as a boy does to his batting or his catching at base-ball; if, when the congregation is at prayer, you determine that you will not be hindered in your prayer; or, when the time comes for singing, that you will not be hindered from joining in the singing with voice or with heart, — why, you can do so. I never heard of a good fielder in base-ball missing a fly because a dog barked, or a horse neighed, on the outside of the ball-ground.

If I kept a high school, I would call together the school once a month, to train all hands in the habits requisite for listeners in public assemblies. They should be taught that just as rowers in a

boat-race row and do nothing else, — as soldiers at dress parade present arms, shoulder arms, and the rest, and do nothing else, no matter what happens, during that half-hour, — that so, when people meet to listen to an address or to a concert, they should listen, and do nothing else.

It is perfectly easy for people to get control and keep control of this habit of attention. If I had the exercise I speak of, in a high school, the scholars should be brought together, as I say, and carried through a series of discipline in presence of mind.

Books, resembling hymn-books in weight and size, should be dropped from galleries behind them, till they were perfectly firm under such scattering fire, and did not look round; squeaking dolls, of the size of large children, should be led squeaking down the passages of the school-room, and other strange objects should be introduced, until the scholars were all proof, and did not turn towards them once. Every one of those scholars would thank me afterwards.

Think of it. You give a dollar, that you may hear one of Thomas's concerts. How little of your money's worth you get, if twenty times, as the concert goes on, you must turn round to see if it was Mrs. Grundy who sneezed, or Mr. Bundy; or if it was Mr. Golightly or Mrs. Heavyside who came in too late at the door. And this attention to what is before you is a matter of habit and discipline. You should determine that you will only



Habits in Church

161

do in church what you go to church for, and adhere to your determination until the habit is formed.

If you find, as a great many boys and girls do, that the sermon in church comes in as a stumbling-block in the way of this resolution, that you cannot fix your attention steadily upon it, I recommend that you try taking notes of it. I have never known this to fail.

It is not necessary to do this in short-hand, though that is a very charming accomplishment. Any one of you can teach himself how to write short-hand, and there is no better practice than you can make for yourself at church in taking notes of sermons.

But supposing you cannot write short-hand. Take a little book with stiff covers, such as you can put in your pocket. The reporters use books of ruled paper, of the length of a school writing-book, but only two or three inches wide, and opening at the end. That is a very good shape. Then you want a pencil or two cut sharp before you go to church. You will learn more easily what you want to write than I can teach you. You cannot write the whole, even of the shortest sentence, without losing part of the next. But you can write the leading ideas, perhaps the leading words.

When you go home you will find you have a "skeleton," as it is called, of the whole sermon. And, if you want to profit by the exercise, you may very well spend an hour of the afternoon in

writing out in neat and finished form a sketch of some one division of it.

But even if you do nothing with the notes after you come home, you will find that they have made the sermon very short for you; that you have been saved from sleepiness, and that you afterwards remember what the preacher said, with unusual distinctness. You will also gradually gain a habit of listening, with a view to remembering; noticing specially the course and train of the argument or of the statement of any speaker.

Of course I need not say that in church you must be reverent in manner, must not disturb others, and must not occupy yourself intentionally with other people's dress or demeanor. If you really meant or wanted to do these things, you would not be reading this paper.

But it may be worth while to say that even children and other young people may remember to advantage that they form a very important part of the congregation. If, therefore, the custom of worship where you are arranges for responses to be read by the people, you, who are among the people, are to respond. If it provides for congregational singing, and you can sing the tune, you are to sing. It is certain that it requires the people all to be in their places when the service begins. That you can do as well as the oldest of them.

When the service is ended, do not hurry away. Do not enter into a wild and useless competition with the other boys as to which shall leap off the



Life with Children 163

front steps the soonest upon the grass of the churchyard. You can arrange much better races elsewhere.

When the benediction is over, wait a minute in your seat; do not look for your hat and gloves till it is over, and then quietly and without jostling leave the church, as you might pass from one room of your father's house into another, when a large number of his friends were at a great party. That is precisely the condition of things in which you are all together.

Observe, dear children, I am speaking only of habits of outside behavior at church. I intentionally turn aside from speaking of the communion with God, to which the church will help you, and the help from your Saviour which the church will make real. These are very great blessings, as I hope you will know. Do not run the risk of losing them by neglecting the little habits of concentrated thought and of devout and simple behavior which may make the hour in church one of the shortest and happiest hours of the week.

CHAPTER XIII

LIFE WITH CHILDREN

THERE is a good deal of the life of boys and girls which passes when they are with other boys and girls, and involves some difficulties with a great

many pleasures, all its own. It is generally taken for granted that if the children are by themselves, all will go well. And if you boys and girls did but know it, many very complimentary things are said about you in this very matter. "Children do understand each other so well." "Children get along so well with each other." "I feel quite relieved when the children find some companions." This sort of thing is said behind the children's backs at the very moment when the same children, quite strangers to each other, are wishing that they were at home themselves, or at least that these sudden new companions were.

There is a well-studied picture of this mixed-up life of boys and girls with other boys and girls who are quite strangers to them in the end of Miss Edgeworth's "Sequel to Frank," — a book which I cannot get the young people to read as much as I wish they would. And I do not at this moment remember any other sketch of it in fiction quite so well managed, with so little overstatement, and with so much real good sense which children may remember to advantage.

Of course, in the first place, you are to do as you would be done by. But, when you have said this, a question is still involved, for you do not know for a moment how you would be done by; or if you do know, you know simply that you would like to be let off from the company of these new-found friends. "If I did as I would be done by," said Clara, "I should turn round and walk to the other



end of the piazza, and I should leave the whole party of these strange girls alone. I was having a very good time without them, and I dare say they would have a better time without me. But papa brought me to them, and said their father was in college with him, and that he wanted that we should know each other. So I could not do, in that case, exactly as I would be done by without displeasing papa, and that would not be doing to him at all as I would be done by."

The English of all this is, my dear Clara, that in that particular exigency on the piazza at Newbury you had a nice book, and you would have been glad to be left alone; nay, at the bottom of your heart, you would be glad to be left alone a good deal of your life. But you do not want to be left alone all your life. And if your father had taken you to Old Point Comfort for a month, instead of Newbury, and you were as much a stranger to the ways there as this shy Lucy Percival is to our Northern ways at Newbury, you would be very much obliged to any nice Virginian girl who swallowed down her dislike of Yankees in general, and came and welcomed you as prettily as, in fact, you did the Percivals when your father brought you to them. The doing as you would be done by requires a study of all the conditions, not of the mere outside accident of the moment.

The direction familiarly given is that we should meet strangers half-way. But I do not find that this wholly answers. These strangers may be re-

presented by globules of quicksilver, or, indeed, of water, on a marble table. Suppose you pour out two little globules of quicksilver at each of two points . . like these two. Suppose you make the globules just so large that they meet half-way, thus, **OO**. At the points where they touch they only touch. It even seems as if there were a little repulsion, so that they shrink away from each other. But, if you will enlarge one of the drops never so little, so that it shall meet the other a very little beyond half-way, why, the two will gladly run together into one, and will even forget that they ever have been parted. That is the true rule for meeting strangers. Meet them a little bit more than half-way. You will find in life that the people who do this are the cheerful people, and happy, who get the most out of society, and, indeed, are everywhere prized and loved. All this is worth saying in a book published in Boston, because New Englanders inherit a great deal of the English shyness, which the French call "mauvaise honte," or "bad shame," and they need to be cautious particularly to meet strangers a little more than half-way. Boston people, in particular, are said to suffer from the habits of "distance" or "reserve."

"But I am sure I do not know what to say to them," says Robert, who with a good deal of difficulty has been made to read this paper thus far. My dear Bob, have I said that you must talk to them? I knew you pretended that you could not talk to people, though yesterday, when I was try-



ing to get my nap in the hammock, I certainly heard a great deal of rattle from somebody who was fixing his boat with Clem Waters in the wood-house. But I have never supposed that you were to sit in agreeable conversation about the weather, or the opera, with these strange boys and girls. Nobody but prigs would do that, and I am glad to say you are not a prig. But if you were turned in on two or three boys as Clara was on the Percival girls, a good thing to say would be, "Would you like to go in swimming?" or "How would you like to see us clean our fish?" or "I am going up to set snares for rabbits; how would you like to go?" Give them a piece of yourself. That is what I mean by meeting more than half-way. Frankly, honorably, without unfair reserve, — which is to say, like a gentleman, — share with these strangers some part of your own life which makes you happy. Clara, there, will do the same thing. She will take these girls to ride, or she will teach them how to play "copack," or she will tell them about her play of the "Sleeping Beauty," and enlist some of them to take parts. This is what I mean by meeting people more than half-way.

It may be that some of the chances of life pitchfork in upon you and your associates a bevy of little children smaller than yourselves, whom you are expected to keep an eye upon. This is a much severer trial of your kindness, and of your good sense also, than the mere introduction to strange boys and girls of your own age. Little



children seem very exacting. They are not so to a person who understands how to manage them. But very likely you do not understand, and, whether you do or do not, they require a constant eye. You will find a great deal to the point in Jonas's directions to Rollo, and in Beechnut's directions to those children in Vermont; and perhaps in what Jonas and Beechnut did with the boys and girls who were hovering round them all the time you will find more light than in their directions. Children, particularly little children, are very glad to be directed, and to be kept even at work, if they are in the company of older persons, and think they are working with them. Jonas states it thus: "Boys will do any amount of work if there is somebody to plan for them, and they will like to do it." If there is any undertaking of an afternoon, and you find that there is a body of the younger children who want to be with you who are older, do not make them and yourselves unhappy by rebuking them for "tagging after" you. Of course they tag after you. At their age you were glad of such improving company as yours is. It has made you what you are. Instead of scolding them, then, just avail yourselves of their presence, and make the occasion comfortable to them, by giving them some occupation for their hands. See how cleverly Fanny is managing down on the beach with those four little imps. Fanny really wants to draw, and she has her water-colors, and Edward Holiday has his and



Life with Children 169

is teaching her. And these four children from the hotel have "tagged" down after her. You would say that was too bad, and you would send them home, I am afraid. Fanny has not said any such thing. She has "accepted the position," and made herself queen of it, as she is apt to do. She showed Reginald, first of all, how to make a rainbow of pebbles, — violet pebbles, indigo pebbles, blue pebbles, and so on to red ones. She explained that it had to be quite large so as to give the good effect. In a minute Ellen had the idea and started another, and then little Jo began to help Ellen, and Phil to help Rex. And there those four children have been tramping back and forth over the beach for an hour, bringing and sorting and arranging colored pebbles while Edward and Fanny have gone on quietly with their drawing.

In short, the great thing with children, as with grown people, is to give them something to do. You can take a child of two years on your knee, while there is reading aloud, so that the company hopes for silence. Well, if you only tell that child to be still, he will be wretched in one minute, and in two will be on the floor and rushing wildly all round the room. But if you will take his little plump hand and "pat a cake" it on yours, or make his little fat fingers into steeples or letters or rabbits, you can keep him quiet without saying a single word for half an hour. At the end of the most tiresome railway journey, when everybody in the car is used up, the children most of all,

you can cheer up these poor tired little things who have been riding day and night for six days from Pontchartrain, if you will take out a pair of scissors and cut out cats and dogs and dancing-girls from the newspaper or from the back of a letter, and will teach them how to parade them along on the velvet of the car. Indeed, I am not quite sure but you will entertain yourself as much as any of them.

In any acting of charades, any arrangement of *tableaux vivants*, or similar amusements, you will always find that the little children are well pleased, and, indeed, are fully satisfied, if they also can be pressed into the service as "slaves" or "soldiers," or, as the procession-makers say, "citizens generally," or what the stage-managers call supernumeraries. They need not be intrusted with "speaking parts;" it is enough for them to know that they are recognized as a part of the company.

I do not think that I enjoy anything more than I do watching a birthday party of children who have known each other at a good Kinder-Garten school like dear Mrs. Heard's. Instead of sitting wearily around the sides of the room, with only such variations as can be rendered by a party of rude boys playing tag up and down the stairs and in the hall, these children, as soon as four of them arrive, begin to play some of the games they have been used to playing at school, or branch off into other games which neither school nor recess has all the appliances for. This is because these chil-



Life with your Elders 171

dren are trained together to associate with each other. The misfortune of most schools is that, to preserve the discipline, the children are trained to have nothing to do with each other, and it is only at recess, or in going and coming, that they get the society which is the great charm and only value of school life. In college, or in any good academy, things are so managed that young men study together when they choose; and there is no better training. In any way you manage it, bring that about. If the master will let you and Rachel sit on the garden steps while you study the "Telemachus," — or if you, Robert and Horace, can go up into the belfry and work out the Algebra together, it will be better for the "Telemachus," better for the Algebra, and much better for you.

CHAPTER XIV

LIFE WITH YOUR ELDERS

HAVE you ever read "Amyas Leigh"? "Amyas Leigh" is an historical novel, written by Charles Kingsley, an English author. His object, or one of his objects, was to extol the old system of education, the system which trained such men as Walter Raleigh and Philip Sidney.

The system was this. When a boy had grown up to be fourteen or fifteen years old, he was sent away from home by his father to some old friend

of his father, who took him into his train or company for whatever service or help he could render. And so, of a sudden, the boy found himself constantly in the company of men, to learn, as he could, what they were doing, and to become a man himself under their contagion and sympathy.

We have abandoned this system. We teach boys and girls as much from books as we can, and we give them all the fewer chances to learn from people or from life.

None the less do the boys and girls meet men and women. And I think it is well worth our while, in these papers, to see how much good and how much pleasure they can get from the companionship.

I reminded you, in the last chapter, of Jonas and Beechnut's wise advice about little children. Do you remember what Jonas told Rollo, when Rollo was annoyed because his father would not take him to ride? That instruction belongs to our present subject. Rollo was very fond of riding with his father and mother, but he thought he did not often get invited, and that, when he invited himself, he was often refused. He confided in Jonas on the subject. Jonas told him substantially two things: first, that his father would not ask him any the more often because he teased him for an invitation. The teasing was in itself wrong, and did not present him in an agreeable light to his father and mother, who wanted a pleasant companion, if they wanted any. This was the first



Life with your Elders 173

thing. The second was that Rollo did not make himself agreeable when he did ride. He soon wanted water to drink. Or he wondered when they should get home. Or he complained because the sun shone in his eyes. He made what the inn-keeper called "a great row generally," and so when his father and mother took their next ride, if they wanted rest and quiet, they were very apt not to invite him. Rollo took the hint. The next time he had an invitation to ride, he remembered that he was the invited party, and bore himself accordingly. He did not "pitch in" in the conversation. He did not obtrude his own affairs. He answered when he was spoken to, listened when he was not spoken to, and found that he was well rewarded by attending to the things which interested his father and mother, and to the matters he was discussing with her. And so it came about that Rollo, by not offering himself again as captain of the party, became a frequent and a favorite companion.

Now in that experience of Rollo's there is involved a good deal of the philosophy of the intercourse between young people and their elders. Yes, I know what you are saying, Theodora and George, just as well as if I heard you. You are saying that you are sure you do not want to go among the old folks. Certainly you shall not go if you are not wanted. But I wish you to observe that sometimes you must go among them, whether you want to or not; and if you must, there are

two things to be brought about, — first, that you get the utmost possible out of the occasion; and, second, that the older people do. So, if you please, we will not go into a huff about it, but look the matter in the face, and see if there is not some simple system which governs the whole.

Do you remember perhaps, George, the first time you found out what good reading there was in men's books, — that day when you had sprained your ankle, and found Mayne Reid palled a little bit, — when I brought you Lossing's "Field-Book of the Revolution," as you sat in the wheel-chair, and you read away upon that for hours? Do you remember how, when you were getting well, you used to limp into my room, and I let you hook down books with the handle of your crutch, so that you read the English Parrys and Captain Back, and then got hold of my great Schoolcraft and Catlin, and finally improved your French a good deal, before you were well, on the thirty-nine volumes of Garnier's "Imaginary Voyages"? You remember that? So do I. That was your first experience in grown-up people's books, — books that are not written down to the supposed comprehension of children. Now there is an experience just like that open to each of you, Theodora and George, whenever you will choose to avail yourselves of it in the society of grown-up people, if you will only take that society simply and modestly, and behave like the sensible boy and girl that you really are.



Life with your Elders 175

Do not be tempted to talk among people who are your elders. Those horrible scrapes that Frank used to get into, such as Harry once got into, arose, like most scrapes in this world, from their want of ability to hold their tongues. Speak when you are spoken to, not till then, and then get off with as little talk as you can. After the second French revolution, my young friend Walter used to wish that there might be a third, so that he might fortunately be in the gallery of the revolutionary convention just when everything came to a dead-lock; and he used to explain to us, as we sat on the parallel bars together at recess, how he would just spring over the front of the gallery, swing himself across to the canopy above the Speaker's seat, and slide down a column to the Tribune, there "where the orators speak, you know," and how he would take advantage of the surprise to address them in their own language; how he would say "*Français,—mes frères*" (which means, Frenchmen,—brothers); and how, in such strains of burning eloquence, he would set all right so instantaneously that he would be proclaimed Dictator, placed in a carriage instantly, and drawn by an adoring and grateful people to the Palace of the Tuileries, to live there for the rest of his natural life. It was natural for Walter to think he could do all that if he got the chance. But I remember, in planning it out, he never got much beyond "*Français,—mes frères*," and in forty years this summer, in which time four revolutions

have taken place in France, Walter has never found the opportunity. It is seldom, very seldom, that in a mixed company it is necessary for a boy of sixteen, or a girl of fifteen, to get the others out of a difficulty. You may burn to interrupt, and to cry out, "*Français, — mes frères,*" but you had better bite your tongue, and sit still. Do not explain that Rio Janeiro is the capital of Brazil. In a few minutes it will appear that they all knew it, though they did not mention it, and by your waiting you will save yourself horrible mortification.

Meanwhile you are learning things in the nicest way in the world. Do not you think that Amyas Leigh enjoyed what he learned of Guiana and the Orinoco River much more than you enjoy all you have ever learned of it? Yes. He learned it all by going there in the company of Walter Raleigh and sundry other such men. Suppose, George, that you could get the engineers, Mr. Burnell and Mr. Philipson, to take you with them when they run the new railroad line, this summer, through the passes of the Adirondack Mountains. Do you not think you shall enjoy that more even than reading Mr. Murray's book, far more than studying levelling and surveying in the first class at the High School? Get a chance to carry chain for them, if you can. No matter if you lose at school two medals, three diplomas, and four double promotions by your absence. Come round to me some afternoon, and I will tell you in an hour all the school-boys learned while you were away in



Life with your Elders 177

the mountains; all, I mean, that you cannot make up in a well-used month after your return.

And please to remember this, all of you, though it seems impossible. Remember it as a fact, even if you cannot account for it, that though we all seem so old to you, just as if we were dropping into our graves, we do not, in practice, feel any older than we did when we were sixteen. True, we have seen the folly of a good many things which you want to see the folly of. We do not, therefore, in practice, sit on the rocks in the spray quite so near to the water as you do; and we go to bed a little earlier, even on moonlight nights. This is the reason that, when the whole merry party meet at breakfast, we are a little more apt to be in our places than — some young people I know. But, for all that, we do not feel any older than we did when we were sixteen. We enjoy building with blocks as well, and we can do it a great deal better; we like the “Arabian Nights” just as well as we ever did; and we can laugh at a good charade quite as loud as any of you can. So you need not take it on yourself to suppose that because you are among “old people,” — by which you mean married people, — all is lost, and that the hours are to be stupid and forlorn. The best series of parties, lasting year in and out, that I have ever known, were in Worcester, Massachusetts, where old and young people associated together more commonly and frequently than in any other town I ever happened to live in, and

where, for that very reason, society was on the best footing. I have seen a boy of twelve take a charming lady, three times his age, down Pearl Street on his sled. And I have ridden in a riding party to Paradise with twenty other horsemen and with twenty-one horsewomen, of whom the youngest, Theodora, was younger than you are, and quite as pretty, and the oldest very likely was a judge on the Supreme Bench. I will not say that she did not like to have one of the judges ride up and talk with her quite as well as if she had been left to Ferdinand Fitz-Mortimer. I will say that some of the Fitz-Mortimer tribe did not ride as well as they did ten years after.

Above all, dear children, work out in life the problem or the method by which you shall be a great deal with your father and your mother. There is no joy in life like the joy you can have with them. Fun or learning, sorrow or jollity, you can share it with them as with nobody beside. You are just like your father, Theodora, and you, George, I see your mother's face in you as you stand behind the bank counter, and I wonder what you have done with your curls. I say you are just like. I am tempted to say you are the same. And you can and you will draw in from them notions and knowledges, lights on life, and impulses and directions which no books will ever teach you, and which it is a shame to work out from long experience, when you can — as you can — have them as your birthright.



Habits of Reading 179

CHAPTER XV

HABITS OF READING

I HAVE devoted two chapters of this book to the matter of Reading, speaking of the selection of books and of the way to read them. But since those papers were first printed, I have had I know not how many nice notes from young people, in all parts of this land, asking all sorts of additional directions. Where the matter has seemed to me private or local, I have answered them in private correspondence. But I believe I can bring together, under the head of "Habits of Reading," some additional notes, which will at least reinforce what has been said already, and will perhaps give clearness and detail.

All young people read a good deal, but I do not see that a great deal comes of it. They think they have to read a good many newspapers and a good many magazines. These are entertaining, — they are very entertaining. But it is not always certain that the reader gets from them just what he needs. On the other hand, it is certain that people who only read the current newspapers and magazines get very little good from each other's society, because they are all fed with just the same intellectual food. You hear them repeat to each other the things they have all read in the *Daily Trumpet*, or the *Saturday Woodpecker*. In these

things, of course, there can be but little variety, all the *Saturday Woodpeckers* of the same date being very much like each other. When, therefore, the people in the same circle meet each other, their conversation cannot be called very entertaining or very improving, if this is all they have to draw upon. It reminds one of the pictures in people's houses in the days of "Art Unions." An Art Union gave you, once a year, a very cheap engraving. But it gave the same engraving to everybody. So, in every house you went to, for one year, you saw the same men dancing on a flat-boat. Then, a year after, you saw Queen Mary signing Lady Jane Grey's death-warrant. She kept signing it all the time. You might make seventeen visits in an afternoon. Everywhere you saw her signing away on that death-warrant. You came to be very tired of the death-warrant and of Queen Mary. Well, that is much the same way in which seventeen people improve each other, who have all been reading the *Daily Trumpet* and the *Saturday Woodpecker*, and have read nothing beside.

I see no objection, however, to light reading, desultory reading, the reading of newspapers, or the reading of fiction, if you take enough ballast with it, so that these light kites, as the sailors call them, may not carry your ship over in some sudden gale. The principle of sound habits of reading, if reduced to a precise rule, comes out thus: That for each hour of light reading, of what we



Habits of Reading

181

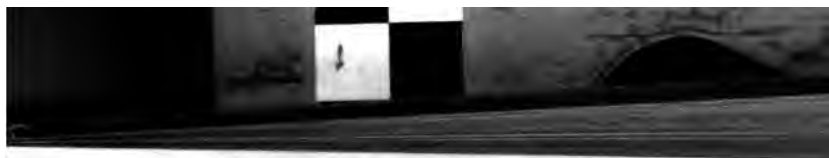
read for amusement, we ought to take another hour of reading for instruction. Nor have I any objection to stating the same rule backward; for that is a poor rule that will not work both ways. It is, I think, true that for every hour we give to grave reading it is well to give a corresponding hour to what is light and amusing.

Now a great deal more is possible under this rule than you boys and girls think at first. Some of the best students in the world, who have advanced its affairs farthest in their particular lines, have not in practice studied more than two hours a day. Walter Scott, except when he was goaded to death, did not work more. Dr. Bowditch translated the great "*Mécanique Céleste*" in less than two hours' daily labor. I have told you already of George Livermore. But then this work was regular as the movement of the planets which Dr. Bowditch and La Place described. It did not stop for whim or by accident, more than Jupiter stops in his orbit because a holiday comes round.

"But what in the world do you suppose Mr. Hale means by 'grave reading,' or 'improving reading'? Does he mean only those stupid books that 'no gentleman's library should be without'? I suppose somebody reads them at some time, or they would not be printed; but I am sure I do not know when or where or how to begin." This is what Theodora says to Florence, when they have read thus far.

Let us see. In the first place, you are not, all of you, to attempt everything. Do one thing well, and read one subject well; that is much better than reading ten subjects shabbily and carelessly. What is your subject? It is not hard to find that out. Here you are, living perhaps on the very road on which the English troops marched to Lexington and Concord. In one of the beams of the barn there is a hole made by a musket-ball, which was fired as they retreated. How much do you know of that march of theirs? How much have you read of the accounts that were written of it the next day? Have you ever read Bancroft's account of it? or Botta's? or Frothingham's? There is a large book, which you can get at without much difficulty, called the "American Archives." The Congress of this country ordered its preparation, at immense expense, that you and people like you might be able to study, in detail, the early history in the original documents, which are reprinted there. In that book you will find the original accounts of the battle as they were published in the next issues of the Massachusetts newspapers. You will find the official reports written home by the English officers. You will find the accounts published by order of the Provincial Congress. When you have read these, you begin to know something about the battle of Lexington.

Then there are such books as General Heath's Memoirs, written by people who were in the battle, giving their account of what passed, and how it



Habits of Reading

183

was done. If you really want to know about a piece of history which transpired in part under the windows of your house, you will find you can very soon bring together the improving and very agreeable solid reading which my rule demands.

Perhaps you do not live by the road that leads to Lexington. Everybody does not. Still, you live somewhere, and you live next to something. As Dr. Thaddeus Harris said to me (Yes, Harry, the same who made your insect-book), "If you have nothing else to study, you can study the mosses and lichens hanging on the logs on the woodpile in the woodhouse." Try that winter botany. Observe for yourself, and bring together the books that will teach you the laws of growth of those wonderful plants. At the end of a winter of such careful study I believe you could have more knowledge of God's work in that realm of nature than any man in America now has, if I except perhaps some five or six of the most distinguished naturalists.

I have told you about making your own index to any important book you read. I ought to have advised you somewhere not to buy many books. If you are reading in books from a library, never, as you are a decently well-behaved boy or girl, never make any sort of mark upon a page which is not your own. All you need, then, for your index, is a little page of paper, folded in where you can use it for a book-mark, on which you will make the same memorandum which you would

have made on the fly-leaf, were the book your own. In this case you will keep these memorandum pages together in your scrap-book, so that you can easily find them. And if, as is very likely, you have to refer to the book afterward, in another edition, you will be glad if your first reference has been so precise that you can easily find the place, although the paging is changed. John Locke's rule is this: Refer to the page, with another reference to the number of pages in the volume. At the same time tell how many volumes there are in the set you use. You would enter Charles II.'s escape from England, as described in the Pictorial History of England, thus:—

“Charles II. escapes after battle of Worcester.

“Pictorial Hist. Eng. $\frac{881}{886}$, Vol. $\frac{3}{4}$.”

You will have but little difficulty in finding your place in any edition of the “Pictorial History,” if you have made as careful a reference as this is.

My own pupils, if I may so call the young friends who read with me, will laugh when they see the direction that you go to the original authorities whenever you can do so. For I send them on very hard-working tramps, that they may find the original authorities, and perhaps they think that I am a little particular about it. Of course, it depends a good deal on what your circumstances are, whether you can go to the originals. But if you are near a large library, the sooner you can cultivate the habit of looking in



Habits of Reading 185

the original writers, the more will you enjoy the study of history, of biography, of geography, or of any other subject. It is stupid enough to learn at school that the Bay of God's Mercy is in N. Latitude 73° , W. Longitude 117° . But read Captain McClure's account of the way the "Resolute" ran into the Bay of God's Mercy, and what good reason he had for naming it so, and I think you will never again forget where it is, or look on the words as only the answer to a stupid "map question."

I was saying very much what I have been writing, last Thursday, to Ella, with whom I had a nice day's sail; and she, who is only too eager about her reading and study, said she did not know where to begin. She felt her ignorance so terribly about every separate thing that she wanted to take hold everywhere. She had been reading "Lothair," and found she knew nothing about Garibaldi and the battle of Aspromonte. Then she had been talking about the long Arctic days with a traveller, and she found she knew nothing about the Arctic regions. She was ashamed to go to a concert, and not know the difference between the lives of Mozart and of Mendelssohn. I had to tell Ella, what I have said to you, that we cannot all of us do all things. Far less can we do them all at once. I reminded her of the rule for European travelling,—which you may be sure is good,—that it is better to spend three days in one place than one day each in three places. And I told

Ella that she must apply the same rule to subjects. Take these very instances. If she really gets well acquainted with Mendelssohn's life,—feels that she knows him, his habit of writing, and what made him what he was,—she will enjoy every piece of his music she ever hears with ten times the interest it had for her before. But if she looks him out in a cyclopædia and forgets him, and looks out Mercadante and forgets him, and finally mixes up Mozart and Mercadante and Mendelssohn and Meyerbeer, because all four of these names begin with M, why, she will be where a great many very nice boys and girls are who go to concerts, but where as sensible a girl as Ella does not want to be, and where I hope none of you want to be for whom I am writing.

But perhaps this is more than need be said after what is in Chapters V. and VI. Now you may put down this book and read for recreation. Shall it be the "Bloody Dagger," or shall it be the "Injured Grandmother"?

CHAPTER XVI

GETTING READY

WHEN I have written a quarter part of this paper the horse and wagon will be brought round, and I shall call for Ferguson and Putnam to go with me for a swim. When I stop at Ferguson's house, he will himself come to the door with his



Getting Ready

187

bag of towels, — I shall not even leave the wagon, — Ferguson will jump in, and then we shall drive to Putnam's. When we come to Putnam's house, Ferguson will jump out and ring the bell. A girl will come to the door, and Ferguson will ask her to tell Horace that we have come for him. She will look a little confused, as if she did not know where he was, but she will go and find him. Ferguson and I will wait in the wagon three or four minutes, and then Horace will come. Ferguson will ask him if he has his towels, and he will say, "Oh, no, I laid them down when I was packing my lunch," and he will run and get them. Just as we start, he will ask me to excuse him just a moment, and he will run back for a letter his father wants him to post as we come home. Then we shall go and have a good swim together.¹

Now in the regular line of literature made and provided for young people, I should go on and make out that Ferguson, simply by his habit of promptness and by being in the right place when he is needed, would rise rapidly to the highest posts of honor and command, becoming indeed Khan of Tartary, or President of the United States, as the exigencies and costume of the story might require. But Horace, merely from not being ready on occasion, would miserably decline, and come to a wretched felon's end ; owing it, indeed, only to the accident of his early acquaintance with Fer-

¹ P. S. — We have been and returned, and all has happened substantially as I said.

guson, that, when the sheriff is about to hang him, a pardon arrives just in time from him (the President). But I shall not carry out for you any such horrible picture of these two good fellows' fate. In my judgment, one of these results is almost as horrible as is the other. I will tell you, however, that the habit of being ready is going to make for Ferguson a great deal of comfort in this world, and bring him in a great deal of enjoyment. And, on the other hand, Horace the Unready, as they would have called him in French history, will work through a great deal of discomfort and mortification before he rids himself of the habit which I have illustrated for you. It is true that he has a certain rapidity, which somebody calls "shiftiness," of resolution and of performance, which gets him out of his scrapes as rapidly as he gets in. But there is a good deal of vital power lost in getting in and getting out, which might be spent to better purpose, — for pure enjoyment, or for helping other people to pure enjoyment.

The art of getting ready, then, shall be the closing subject of this little series of papers. Of course, in the wider sense, all education might be called the art of getting ready, as, in the broadest sense of all, I hope all you children remember every day that the whole of this life is the getting ready for life beyond this. Bear that in mind, and you will not say that this is a trivial accomplishment of Ferguson's, which makes him always



Getting Ready

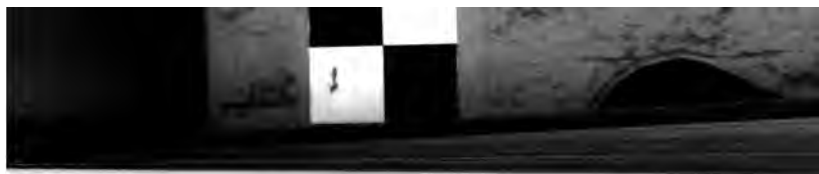
189

a welcome companion, often and often gives him the power of rendering a favor to somebody who has forgotten something, and, in short, in the twenty-four hours of every day, gives to him "all the time there is." It is also one of those accomplishments, as I believe, which can readily be learned or gained, not depending materially on temperament or native constitution. It comes almost of course to a person who has his various powers well in hand, — who knows what he can do, and what he cannot do, and does not attempt more than he can perform. On the other hand, it is an accomplishment very difficult of acquirement to a boy who has not yet found what he is good for, who has forty irons in the fire, and is changing from one to another as rapidly as the circus-rider changes, or seems to change, from Mr. Pickwick to Sam Weller.

Form the habit, then, of looking at to-morrow as if you were the master of to-morrow, and not its slave. "There's no such word as fail!" That is what Richelieu says to the boy, and in the real conviction that you can control such circumstances as made Horace late for our ride, you have the power that will master them. As Mrs. Henry said to her husband, about leaping over the high bar, — "Throw your heart over, John, and your heels will go over." That is a very fine remark, and it covers a great many problems in life besides those of circus-riding. You are, thus far, master of to-morrow. It has not outflanked you, nor

circumvented you at any point. You do not propose that it shall. What, then, is the first thing to be sought by way of "getting ready," of preparation?

It is vivid imagination of to-morrow. Ask in advance, What time does the train start? *Answer*, "Seven minutes of eight." What time is breakfast? *Answer*, "For the family, half-past seven." Then I will now, lest it be forgotten, ask Mary to give me a cup of coffee at seven fifteen; and, lest she should forget it, I will write it on this card, and she may tuck the card in her kitchen-clock case. What have I to take in the train? *Answer*, "Father's foreign letters, to save the English mail, my own *Young Folks* to be bound, and Fanny's breast-pin for a new pin." Then I hang my hand-bag now on the peg under my hat, put into it the *Young Folks* and the breast-pin box, and ask father to put into it the English letters when they are done. Do you not see that the more exact the work of the imagination on Tuesday, the less petty strain will there be on memory when Wednesday comes? If you have made that preparation, you may lie in bed Wednesday morning till the very moment which shall leave you time enough for washing and dressing; then you may take your breakfast comfortably, may strike your train accurately, and attend to your commissions easily. Whereas Horace, on his method of life, would have to get up early to be sure that his things were brought together, in the confusion of the



Getting Ready

191

morning would not be able to find No. 11 of the *Young Folks*, in looking for that would lose his breakfast, and afterwards would lose the train, and, looking back on his day, would find that he rose early, came to town late, and did not get to the bookbinder's, after all. The relief from such blunders and annoyance comes, I say, in a lively habit of imagination, forecasting the thing that is to be done. Once forecast in its detail, it is very easy to get ready for it.

Do you not remember, in "Swiss Family Robinson," that when they came to a very hard pinch for want of twine or scissors or nails, the mother, Elizabeth, always had it in her "wonderful bag"? I was young enough when I first read "Swiss Family" to be really taken in by this, and to think it magic. Indeed, I supposed the bag to be a lady's work-bag of beads or melon-seeds, such as were then in fashion, and to have such quantities of things come out of it was in no wise short of magic. It was not for many, many years that I observed that Francis sat on this bag in his tub, as they sailed to the shore. In those later years, however, I also noticed a sneer of Ernest's which I had overlooked before. He says, "I do not see anything very wonderful in taking out of a bag the same thing you have put into it." But his wise father says that it is the presence of mind which in the midst of shipwreck put the right things into the bag which makes the wonder. Now, in daily life, what we need for the comfort



and readiness of the next day is such forecast and presence of mind, with a vivid imagination of the various exigencies it will bring us to.

Jo Matthew was the most prompt and ready person, with one exception, whom I have ever had to deal with. I hope Jo will read this. If he does, will he not write to me? I said to Jo once when we were at work together in the barn, that I wished I had his knack of laying down a tool so carefully that he knew just where to find it. "Ah," said he, laughing, "we learned that in the cotton-mill. When you are running four looms, if something gives way, it will not do to be going round asking where this tool is or that." Now Jo's answer really fits all life very well. The tide will not wait, dear Pauline, while you are asking, "Where is my blue bow?" Nor will the train wait, dear George, while you are asking, "Where is my Walton's Arithmetic?"

We are all in a great mill, and we can master it, or it will master us, just as we choose to be ready or not ready for the opening and shutting of its opportunities.

I remember that when Haliburton was visiting General Hooker's headquarters, he arrived just as the General, with a brilliant staff, was about to ride out to make an interesting examination of the position. He asked Haliburton if he would join them, and, when Haliburton accepted the invitation gladly, he bade an aide mount him. The aide asked Haliburton what sort of horse he



Getting Ready 193

would have, and Haliburton said he would — and he knew he could — “ride anything.” He is a thorough horseman. You see what a pleasure it was to him that he was perfectly ready for that contingency, wholly unexpected as it was. I like to hear him tell the story, and I often repeat it to young people, who wonder why some persons get forward so much more easily than others. Warburton, at the same moment, would have had to apologize, and say he would stay in camp writing letters, though he would have had nothing to say. For Warburton had never ridden horses to water or to the blacksmith’s, and could not have mounted on the stupidest beast in the headquarters encampment. The difference between the two men is simply that the one is ready and the other is not.

Nothing comes amiss in the great business of preparation, if it has been thoroughly well learned. And the strangest things came of use, too, at the strangest times. A sailor teaches you to tie a knot when you are on a fishing party, and you tie that knot the next time when you are patching up the Emperor of Russia’s carriage for him, in a valley in the Ural Mountains. But “getting ready” does not mean the piling in of a heap of accidental accomplishments. It means sedulously examining the coming duty or pleasure, imagining it even in its details, decreeing the utmost punctuality so far as you are concerned, and thus entering upon them as a knight armed





HOW TO LIVE

[Seventeen years after the publication of *How to Do It*, I was asked to prepare for the great Chautauqua Reading Course the papers on Practical Ethics of 1886.

I addressed these to the seniors of the young people for whom *How to Do It* was written. They were printed for fifty thousand Chautauqua readers in 1886 under the title *How to Live*.]

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

I AM to send to *The Chautauquan* sixteen papers on the Method and Practice of Life.

They will be called "HOW TO LIVE."

They are, therefore, essays in practical ethics.

The received treatises on morals, with a few distinguished exceptions, treat very largely on the origin of morals. They discuss the questions, how does man know what is right or what is wrong, and why does he think one thing right and another wrong?

There are but very few books which, taking for granted, once for all, the sense of right, attempt to give what I may call practical recipes for living, — which may be made of use, — as directions for the care of hens, or the feeding of cows, or the mixing of bread are made of use.

I have undertaken to give to the readers of

The Chautauquan sixteen essays, which shall, in practice, give such directions. I am not to discuss the origin of the moral sense. On the other hand, I take it for granted that the readers of these papers have a distinct notion of the difference between "Ought" and "Ought not," between what is right and what is wrong.

I shall take for granted some other things, connected more or less directly with this sense of right and wrong.

I shall take it for granted that my readers believe in the existence of God,—and in his presence here now,—that he loves them and cares for them.

I shall suppose that my readers know they are his children,—that they may be partakers of his nature,—and that they wish to draw near to him.

I suppose also that I and my readers agree, in believing that in the New Testament, the Son of God gave statements of man's duty and of the Way of Life,—which, on the whole, we can understand; and that this statement is sufficient for our direction if we faithfully use it.

I should never have written the essays which the reader is now to try to read, but that, many years ago, I wrote a smaller book, for younger readers, which was called "HOW TO DO IT."

This book proved to be useful, and has since been a text-book in many schools in this country and in Europe.



Introduction

199

In a friendly and familiar way I undertook to teach my young friends—not the essentials of life—but some of those details of method which are next to essentials in modern Society. Thus one chapter told “How to Talk,” one “How to Read,” one “How to Write,” and one “How to go into Society.”

The young people for whom it was written were about seventeen years old seventeen years ago. They are now the fathers and mothers of families. One or another of them asks me, almost every week of my life, some question much more serious than those of talking or of writing. Such questions I answer as I can,—now in a sermon, now in a letter, now on the front seat of the carriage, while those behind us are chattering on other themes. One of the queens in her own circle, who, with the noblest inspirations allied to intuitive wisdom, makes glad hundreds all around her, has asked me to write a chapter in answer to the question “How to grow old?” When I told another of my best advisers of this question, she said, “I would advise you to write on ‘How to grow young.’” There is wisdom in both suggestions.

From a thousand such suggestions and questions the plan of these papers has grown. The essays, such as they are, will embody the suggestions from at least a thousand of such advisers, persons, all of them, of some experience in the matters where they question and advise.

Such as they are, the essays are written by an American for Americans. They are written by an American who is neither rich nor poor, for Americans who are neither rich nor poor. They attempt to meet only the common conditions of our social order.

It is necessary to say this, in an introduction, because, by misfortune, much of what we read in America is written in England, by people who know the English social order only, and write for it, as they should. We therefore sympathize with the position, the trials, the successes and misfortunes of Lord Fitz-Mortimer and Lady Agnes, and almost fancy, for a moment, that we are Marquises or Dukes, Marchionesses or Duchesses. At least we feel, as Mr. Pinckney did, that, apart from our republican prejudices, we should be very glad to fill the position of an English nobleman with a large and independent income.

Now, in fact, none of us will fill that position, no, nor any position like it. We are American citizens, and shall remain such. To a certain extent each of us is a leader in the social circle in which he lives, and that is a legitimate ambition by which any one of us tries to enlarge such leadership. But, all the same, each of us has to lay down the novel to go and take care of his horse, or his child, or his shop, or his correspondence; each of us has duties to society which he cannot shirk; each of us must consider "ought" and "ought not" from a point of view wholly different



Introduction

201

from that of those people we read of in the romances or in the history of other parts of the world.

So far as I can understand it, their position has some very great difficulties. Our position also has some very great difficulties. But their difficulties are not by any means always ours, and our difficulties are not always theirs.

I have, therefore, to say, in the beginning, that this is an American book, written by an American author for American readers. I have no idea that any person trained under other institutions than ours will ever understand it. Far less will such people profit by it. Dr. Furness once said that he remembered no writer trained under an absolute government who seemed to understand what Jesus Christ meant by the "Kingdom of God," which our time sometimes calls "The Christian Commonwealth."¹ I should say the same thing. And, therefore, I should say in general, to readers in America, that they must form their social ethics distinctly in view of their social condition. We do not live in a community where one person is the "fountain of honor." We do live in a community where from the lowest class to the highest, there is open promotion. We do not live in a community where any President or Governor is the Sovereign. We do live in a community where the People is the Sovereign, and Presidents and

¹ It could be wished that the address of his which contains this statement, and a hundred others of his addresses, might be printed.

Governors are the servants, perhaps messengers or clerks, of the people. Most important of all, we live in a community where, from the nature of things, every man must bear his brother's burdens.

I dislike "Introductions," and I generally skip them, when others have written them, and omit them in printing or in addressing the public, when I have written them myself. But in this case, as these essays must be, at best, too short for my purpose, I choose to have my way clear, as far as I can clear it, by saying in advance what I do not propose and what I do. Most "criticism" consists of the surprise of the critic, because the author does not do something else, which the critic would have done in his place. I do not write this book for the critics. I write it for the people who want to discuss these questions in this way. The best success I ask for the series is that described by Abraham Lincoln, — that those people may like it who like that sort of a book. For the others, I hope they will write their own books, and that those who like them will read them.

The essays will be an effort to answer such questions as these: —

- How to choose one's calling.
- How to divide time.
- How to sleep and exercise.
- How to study and think.
- How to know God.
- How to order expenses.



Introduction

203

How to dress.

How to supply the table.

How to bear your brother's burden.

How to remain young.

How to deal with one's children.

How to deal with society.

How to grow old.

There will be a paper on "Duty to the State," and one on "Duty to the Church of Christ."

Strictly speaking, each of these should be considered last, if this were possible; that is, each subject needs to be studied in the light of the others, and with the assumption that we are quite right about the others.

For instance, if I do not sleep well, I cannot think well; and, on the other hand, if I have not my mind well under control, I shall not sleep well.

In practice, a man's growth is, or might be, even along all these several lines. In writing for the press, however, all the papers cannot be first, nor all last, nor can all be published side by side. The reader and I will do as well as we can.



CHAPTER II

HOW TO CHOOSE ONE'S CALLING

PALEY says that it is a great blessing to mankind that ninety-nine things out of a hundred in our lives are ordered for us, and that we only have to make a choice one time, while ninety-nine are thus directed for us.

This is probably true. Both parts of the statement are probably true. That ninety-nine per cent of our duties are offered to us, and must be met, and also that it is well for us that we do not have a choice more often than we do.

The ease of choice is very different with different people. Some people decide promptly, and then rest squarely on the decision. Other people decide slowly and with difficulty, and some of them, even then, doubt their decisions after they have been made.

Did you never ride into Erie with your excellent Aunt Cynthia, who had to choose there some cambrics to face some dresses with, when she spent the whole morning in selecting among four or five kinds, and, after all, went back the next day to ask the dealer to be good enough to change those she had bought for others? Dear Aunt Cynthia is



How to Choose one's Calling 205

not the only person in the world who finds it hard to make a decision and hard to hold by it.

Now it may be well to take a long time to make a decision. That is matter, very largely, of temperament. I had two near friends, who came to visit me on two different evenings. To each of them I showed my book of questions, which I call a "Moral Photograph Book." You have twenty questions which a person is to answer, off-hand, in writing: such questions as, "Who is your favorite author?" "What is your favorite newspaper?" "What is your favorite flower?"

One of my two friends was a great banker. He took the book and his pencil, and answered the twenty questions almost as fast as he could write. He was used to making up his mind promptly. His business required prompt decision. Some man would say at his desk, "What will you give for High-flyers to-day — to be delivered in thirty-one days?" and he would answer at once, "I will give $37\frac{1}{2}$." Such promptness had become with him second nature. My other friend was a judge of the Supreme Court. He took the first question, and discussed it, and then left it for another discussion. He talked on the second question, and wrote an answer at last. The third was left, subject to a second consideration. Most entertaining these discussions were. But, at the end of a long visit he had only answered six, and he never answered the others.

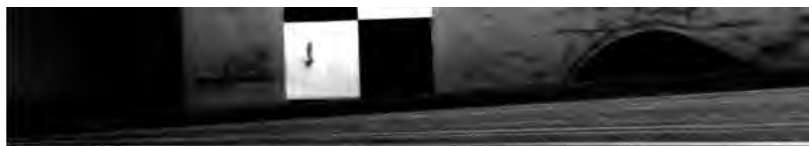
Now, I think both these men were right, morally.

One of them is made for prompt judgments. That makes him a great banker. The other is made for careful judgments which command the respect of man. That makes him a great judge.

But each of these men would have held to his judgment when he had made it. There they differ from your poor Aunt Cynthia. And we must train ourselves to do what the old lawyers required, — “to stand by the decisions.” “*Stare decisis*” was their phrase. “If you start to take Vienna, take Vienna,” said Napoleon. And he who directs us all says, “He who endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.”

Bearing in mind, then, that our choice of occupation is not a thing for to-morrow to be changed the next day, we go about it seriously. William Ware said once, rather sorrowfully, that a young man is called into his father’s room for a serious talk of an afternoon, and, in fifteen minutes, his career for all life is decided for him. This ought not to be so. He and his should take not days only, but months and years in the choice, *if they can*. His temperament is to be considered, — his real ability, — what he likes and what he does not like. We need not care much for the consideration whether this or that calling is over-crowded. If there is not room in one place for a good workman, there is in another. Or, at least, it may be a good step in the ladder for something higher. Mr. Webster says, “There is always room higher up.”

Some of the very best artists have said, as to



How to Choose one's Calling 207

Fine Art, that you must not ask whether a pupil has a genius for his art,¹ but whether he likes it. They say that if a boy likes to play the piano well enough to do the hard work, you should let him go on, hoping that the ability will appear. But I observe that this instruction is given by people of genius. They may be too apt to think that the pupils are like themselves. This is true, that "liking" and steadiness make the best test we have. As to genius, we are often mistaken. But there are questions to be considered beside this of liking, and, probably, to be considered first.

This is certain, that you are to do the duty which comes next your hand. Say, you are sixteen years old. Your father and mother have other children to care for, and it is time you are earning your living. I should not say then that you have a large range in choosing what you will do. You must do what there is to be done in that place, at that time. Thus, the doctor wants an intelligent boy to drive his horse for him. Or, Mr. Longstroth wants an intelligent boy to copy for him his treatise on the "Visigoths in Catalonia." Or, John Brither wants an intelligent boy to carry his three-leg and his chain for him in the survey of the Hills Common. Where there open before you these three chances to be of use and to earn your

¹ I had in my mind when I wrote two artists of the highest rank. One of the two was William Morris Hunt, who is no longer living. The other is one of the most distinguished musicians of America.

living, you may select from the three that one which you like best, either for the pay, the open air, or the man whom you are to work under. But you must not reject all, because you do not like any one. You have these three lines from which to choose, but you must choose one duty next your hand. As among these three, you will choose that which on the whole offers most recompense, which on the whole you like best, and on the whole offers most promotion.

But I should not call such decisions the choice of one's calling in life. These are rather steps in education, and you select them as a man might choose one of two or three schools which were open to him. They will, among other things, show you what you are fit for, and what you can do well, which, probably, at sixteen years of age, you do not know.

When the time comes for a decision more likely to be of permanent importance, you have to ask :

1. Is this business right or wrong? You must not be a pirate. You must not be a counterfeiter. You must not be a burglar. You ought to go into no business which in practice, and generally, injures your fellow-men more than it helps them. You may go into the manufacture of powder, because, though powder kills people, it has other uses much larger than those of murder. But you ought not to retail liquor, nor sell liquors for a beverage. I would not manufacture them, though some liquors have some uses. You must not, intentionally, lead men into temptation.



How to Choose one's Calling 209

2. Of two callings, one of which is better for your constitution and health than the other, you choose the healthier.

3. Look shyly on any calling which does not open out into larger lines of life. You have a right, as you grow older, to regular promotion.

4. If you have a fair opportunity to carry to a new place the resources or attainments of an old place, there are good reasons for doing so. The chances of young men and women are, on the whole, better in a new country, and it should be so. For the invalids, those who are not adventurous, and the people who have tried themselves and have proved failures, all like to stay in an old country, and they keep down the rates of compensation there. This is a legitimate reason why the well people, the adventurous, and those who want to try themselves should become apostles to a new country.

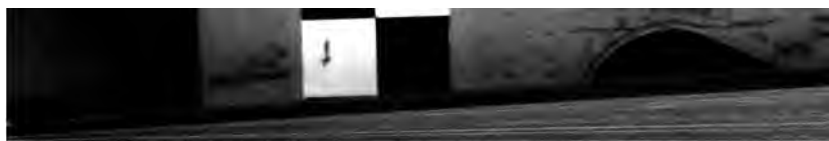
5. Choose what is in the line of your genius, if you know what that is. But, as has been said, until they have tried, very few people know. And, on the whole, work tells. Your great artist is a great artist, but very likely he would have been a great machinist, or a great poet.

6. An American has no right to take any calling in which he cannot serve the State when the State needs him. He must take his share in the moral, social, and religious life of the town in which he lives.

These notes, which are all for which this chapter



has room, will be considered again, as the discussion goes on in these papers. A man's regular vocation should be considered in view of his other occupations, which have been called, perhaps incorrectly, his avocations; and of his sleep, his exercise, his study, and of each of the separate lines of duty which will now come into our view.



How to Sleep

211

CHAPTER III

HOW TO SLEEP

TO sleep well is one of your duties. Do not cultivate, do not permit, any of the sentimental nonsense which speaks as if sleep were a matter of chance, or were out of your control. You must sleep well, if you mean to do the rest well. You must have body and mind in good working order; and they will not be in good working order, unless you sleep regularly, steadily, and enough. Here is the reason why one places the command of sleep so early in a practical working list of men's duties and habits.

One reason why there is so much vagueness and false sentiment in people's talk about sleep, and their behavior about it, is that the true physiology of sleep has only been known for the last generation. Old Galen, the Greek physician, supposed that in sleep the blood-vessels of the brain are more heavily gorged with blood than they are when one is awake, and this mistake has been entertained almost until our time. It is a mistake. Modern researches have made it certain that in real sleep, — in the sleep which refreshes and renews, — the blood is largely withdrawn from the brain. "*Stupor*" is what follows when the blood-



vessels of the brain are over-gorged. In sleep they contain not more than three-quarters of the blood which is in them when you are awake.

The old farmer was perfectly right, who used, before he went to bed, to draw off his boots, and to bring his feet as near the coals on the hearth as he could without scorching his stockings, so that he might be ready to sleep as soon as he got into bed. If the old man said he did it "to get the blood off his brain," he showed that he knew more than old Galen did. And — so far as our physiology goes — all our effort in securing sweet sleep must be turned to this business of withdrawing blood from the circulation of the brain. When, on the other hand, you find that your head is on fire, — nay, that it almost sets the pillow-case on fire, — and that you lie in bed, pitching and tossing like an anchored ship in a heavy gale, it is because you have neglected the proper precautions, and the circulation of blood in your brain is going on with undue rapidity and intensity.

Try to regard sleep as a duty. Then, just as you would be ashamed and mortified if you were the father of a family, and found in the morning that there was no wood for the fire, no water for the kettle, no bread, no butter, no flour, nor anything to eat, so you feel mortified and ashamed if, when night comes, you do not feel the prompting and the power to sleep. Oh! yes, I know all about the exceptions. I know, in the one case, that there may have been a freshet, and that the kitchen



How to Sleep

213

and the store-room may have been taken down the creek to the river, and down the river to the Gulf of Mexico, and through the Gulf of Mexico to the sea. And I know, in the other case, that some dear friend of yours may be hanging between life and death, and you waiting for the messenger who shall tell you which befalls. There are always exceptions. But, granting the exceptions, you ought to be as eager to sleep as to eat your dinner, as able to sleep as to eat your dinner. And if you find you are not, do not pet the derangement of your life; do not sit reading a novel or a newspaper till the sleep comes; but study carefully the causes of failure, and be sure so to cure that disease that with the time for sleep shall come the desire.

Do not place any confidence in the old laws which limit the amount of sleep. There are such old lies as "six hours sleep for a maid, and seven hours sleep for a man." Take all you need, and do not let any one tell you how much you need. You will know better than any one else. The rule is correlative to the rule for work. Thomas Drew stated it thus: "You have no right in any day to incur more fatigue than the sleep of the next night will recover from."

I am taking it for granted that you can do as you choose in this matter. I am taking it for granted that you have a Will about it, and can use that Will. That is to say, I take it for granted that you are a child of God, who can WILL AND DO

what pleases him. Now, it pleases him that you shall wake every morning as fresh and happy and cheerful as that bird awakes which you hear singing when your eyes first open. It does not please him that you shall wake doubtful, tired, unwilling for a new day.

We have come to the first duty in our examination, "How to Live." We must here squarely resolve to do that duty though the sky falls. "I WILL." There is the whole thing; if we cannot do that, we may as well stop before we begin.

I. I will sleep. What is needed for that physiologically? It is needed that the blood shall gently, easily, and steadily leave my brain; and this, probably, for some hours before the time for sleep comes. Then, I must not be working my brain on difficult problems up to the last moment, and then turn brutally round on it, and say, "Stop working."

In especial, you must not undertake late in the day anybody's problems of mathematics, say arithmetic or other puzzles, if I may call them so. Business men who have large trusts to manage are forever making mistakes here. Such men as bank cashiers feel that they must give the business hours to the business of the bank. Then when evening comes, they take the two hours before bed-time, "So quiet, you know," for their own personal affairs, as, to write the letters about their own insurance, or to their tenants, or to fuss over the housekeeping accounts. You must not



How to Sleep

215

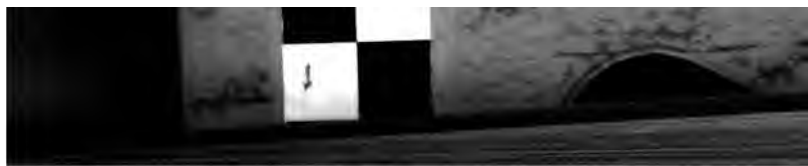
do any such thing. The last hours of the day must be for rest and solace to this brain which you have been working all day. Better for you, if you can give it five or six such hours; if, going to bed at ten, you undertake no serious mental problem after four or five in the afternoon.

"But these things must be done," you say. Perhaps they must, though with regard to that I am not so certain as you are. If they must be done, do them to-morrow morning, between five and seven, if you please, or between six and eight. Whether they be done, or not done, make sure of this, that this good friend of yours, your brain, who has done you so much good work, and will do you so much more, has five or six hours of easy life every day, before you and he go to sleep together. You are not to press him in those last hours. You may press him in the early hours of the day, with certain exceptions which shall be noted in another place. You are not to press him after sunset, nay, not in the hours when the sun goes fastest down.

II. When the time comes, and you enter on this business of sleep, attend to it with all your heart and soul and mind and strength. Here is the bed, all ready for you, and you are as ready for it. Put out the light, tumble into bed, pull up the coverings, and go to sleep. That is what the bed is for, that is what you are for. Yes! If you wish, as your cheek feels the cool of the pillow, you may thank the good God for his mercies, the pillow

not the least of them, and you may make your prayer. This, if you have not done it on your knees at the bedside. But that is all. You are not to ask yourself whether the day has been a good day or a bad day. You are not to review the past, or look forward into the future. You are not to plan that letter which you will write to Allestree about the cattle. You are not to plan out the way in which you can move the beds so as to make room for Lucinda's children. You are not to think of anything but SLEEP. You are to go to sleep, and, if you can, you are to stay asleep until the morning comes. And so soon as you can teach yourself that sleep is a duty and a central duty, that it is not an accident, an incident, or a mere bit of good fortune, the more able will you be to keep yourself in training at this critical moment, and to refuse all the temptations. They are temptations to carry on the business of the day in the hours of the night, hours which are reserved for a very different affair.

In nine cases out of ten, if you have left this good-natured, hard-working brain to the six hours' rest which has been described, you will have no trouble in the first three or four hours of the night. The practical difficulty begins, for most people who are troubled by sleeplessness, at one or two o'clock in the morning. This is not the place for the description of that trouble so far as it comes from indigestion, from dyspepsia, from tea or coffee, or from hunger. It does come from these



How to Sleep 217

things forty-nine times out of fifty, and they shall be spoken of in their place. It is to the fiftieth time that the rules apply which you will hear at every corner, about occupying the mind with some monotonous subject, such as saying the multiplication table, repeating familiar poetry, looking at a flock of sheep, and so on.

I do not say but these may be used in their place, because sensible people use them and offer them. Greyford wrote me a long letter once, in which he said that the habit of his mind was discursive. He said that when he was sleepless, his mind ranged over everything in creation, and that it was work for him to keep it in the harness, and to make it trot within the ruts and on the high-ways. So he would compel it to give him, in order, three names of kings beginning with A: Alexander, Agesilaus, Alfred; three names beginning with B: Baldwin, Brian, Beelzebub; and that by the time he got to G or H he was asleep. But this would not work for every one; and in general you may say of such rules what Dr. Hammond says, that it is setting fire to half of the village by way of stopping the conflagration of the other half. The only practical help I ever had from such rules was given me by Captain Collins, the night before he went to the Amoor River. He says, "When you are sure you are not going to sleep, open your eyes and compel them to look straight before them. If it is pitch-dark, let them look into the darkness. If there is a little light,

let them look upon the tassel or the picture which is before them. In a minute the open eye-lids will want to shut. "No, when I wanted you to shut, when I wanted you to go to sleep, you would not. Now you must look at the picture, or the tassel, or the blackness. Look; think picture, tassel, blackness; and think nothing else."

I have tried this and with good effect. But I have varied on it, by going to the Amoor River in my bed to join Captain Collins there, and much more often than "I think picture or tassel or blackness," I think of a certain log cabin at the mouth of that river, of its verandas, and the walk down to the stream, and the vines that grew upon the verandas, till I am thinking no more. And, oddly enough, the other day another man told me that he had the same experience at such times.

But a physical cure is better than all this play with an over-wrought brain. Jump out of bed, rub yourself heartily with a crash towel or mitten, sponge your head thoroughly for two or three minutes with cold water, take a wet towel back to bed with you, and wind it around your forehead. All this, you see, is to drive the blood off the brain again. And take this always as a rule in life,—that if there is a physical cure, you are to use it,—and not seek for a cure in the higher regions. Do not go to the minister for his spiritual counsel, when a blue pill, or ten pillules of *hyoscyamus*, will answer. Do not cut blocks with a razor.



How to Sleep

219

III. If I had the space, I should go quite at length here into detailed recipes of prescriptions for the control of sleep. For I have been pained to learn, since I delivered some lectures on the subject more than fifteen years ago, that very many Americans suffer from sleeplessness. Our eager life, the wide range of our duties, and what Mr. Appleton calls the "whip of the sky" drive them into an intensity of effort, day and night, for which sleeplessness is the revenge. But I must satisfy myself by putting a few short notes at the end of this paper, and by referring sufferers to Dr. Hammond's treatise on Sleep, which they will find interesting, instructive, and, if they will obey, very useful. Meanwhile, I really hope that nineteen-twentieths of the readers of this paper do not suffer in this way. It is for them that I write what remains. For there is really no need that they should suffer. I have said that sleep is a duty. It is at the same time a privilege, and everybody may have the privilege who will discharge the duty. But the duty is all interlinked with every other duty in life. You are not going to buy the privilege so cheaply as by repeating the multiplication table, or by thinking of a flock of sheep jumping over a wall, or by buying half an ounce of bromide of potassium. The privilege means that you hold in control your body and your mind, which are the two tools of your soul, and that your soul knows what it is to control body and mind, and how to become master and mistress of them.

Now take an instance. You find, as some people do, that if you drink tea or coffee at seven in the evening, you cannot compel sleep at one the next morning. Or, if you eat a Welsh rarebit of cheese just before you go to bed, you find, four hours after, that you cannot sleep. Some people cannot. Are you now your own master or mistress in this matter of the tea, the coffee, and the cheese, or are you the slave of tea, coffee, and cheese? That is the square question. And the answer to that question throws us back where we were in the beginning. It answers what seems a larger question. "Are you a partaker of the Divine Nature?" or are you only one who, as the Bible puts it, "*may* be a partaker of the Divine Nature"? If you are in this latter class, is it not worth while to promote yourself, with God's help, from "may be" to "am"?

"I am a partaker of the Divine Nature. I will control this tea and coffee and cheese. I can do without them and they may do without me."

I may say just the same thing about the mental perplexities which come in the middle of the night, and harass one and distress him. John Jones will be sure to come to me at eleven o'clock to make me indorse that note for him, and what in the world shall I say?

In the first place John Jones and his note have no business in this bed. This bed is the altar of sleep. I will not receive John Jones here. He and his note shall not come into this room. If



How to Sleep

221

the American minister in London had led me to the Queen's drawing-room, if I had just kissed her hand, and if she had just asked me how the children were, I should not stop to talk to John Jones about his note. He shall not bother me here, any more than he would there.

Or you may put it in the broader statement. Everything must conform to absolute Right. About John Jones' note there is a Right thing to do and there is a Wrong thing to do. When he comes to me in the morning I shall have all the arguments on both sides before me. What there is to know I shall know. And I shall have the good God to direct me if I seek him. I will do the right thing then. The right thing now is to go to sleep, and that thing I will do now.

The central rule of life is not that we must always refer everything to first principles, not that we do refer everything to first principles, but that we are ready to do so if there is need. That readiness makes life simple, easy, and successful.

NOTES

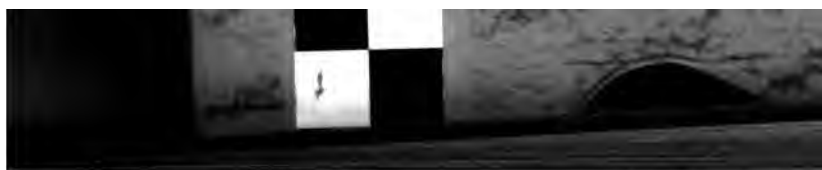
1. Dr. Hammond says, and I am sure he is right, that many more people lie awake from hunger than do so from having eaten too much. Recollect how almost all animals go to sleep immediately after feeding. I shall show in another place why I think a short nap after dinner a good practice, if you can manage it. This is certain

that many people, perhaps most people, require some simple, easily digested food just before going to bed. I know people who find an advantage in having a biscuit at the side of the bed, to eat in the night if they are wakeful.

In this connection I may quote from Dr. Hammond his remark that "all American women are under-fed." When, in lecturing, I used to repeat this at the West, it was received with shouts of laughter. But at the East it was regarded as the serious expression of a serious truth. I cite it here that I may call the attention of people who are suffering under the varied forms of "nervous prostration" to the question whether they are regularly eating and digesting enough, in quantity, of simple food.

2. What I have said connects distinctly with Dr. Hammond's axiom, "The complete satisfaction of any natural appetite is generally followed by sleep or the desire for sleep."

3. In our habits of life, the use of tea and coffee has a great deal to do with sleep or the loss of it. It is idle for one person to make rules for another. I have only to say that if, after full experience, you find they keep you awake, "they must go," to borrow the expressive mountain phrase. There is, probably, some foundation for the general habit which has thrown coffee upon the morning meal, and reserved tea for that of evening. But, on the other hand, it is said, and I think truly, that the sleeplessness resulting from coffee is agreeable, or



How to Sleep

223

not intolerable, while the sleeplessness which follows tea, is rasping, provoking, and aggravating. I believe, myself, that the use of both depends very largely on the amount of exercise in the open air. I should say to any person who wishes to use tea or coffee at the evening meal of the day, that he could probably do so in moderation, if he was willing always to walk three miles in the open air afterward. Of these details, however, I shall speak more at length under the head of Exercise.

4. To the specific recommendations given in the text for the benefit of the sleepers, I will only add here that you may almost always secure three or four hours of good sleep by the use of a hot foot-bath, as hot as you can well bear. You may put a little mustard into it, to increase the stimulus to the skin. Steep your hands in the hot water at the same time. All this draws the blood off the brain. The use of the hair-mitten, a cool pillow-case, or, if you please, a pillow of cold water, has the same purpose.

5. Dr. Franklin was wholly ignorant of the true physiology of sleep, and his papers on the subject are full of theoretical errors; but some of his practical instructions are very sensible, as they are amusing.

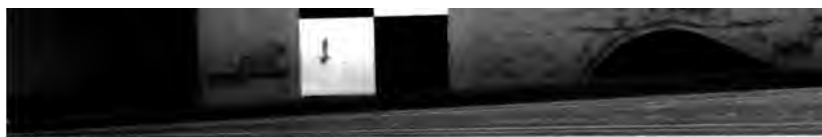
6. I wish some ingenious machinist would fit up a phonograph to be run by clock-work, which I could start, — say at two in the morning, — and make it deliver to me one of Dr. Primrose's sermons, with all his delightful, drowsy cadence.

Failing this, a good musical box which will run half an hour without winding, is a convenient piece of furniture in a bedroom, especially where there are restless children.

7. The habit of sleeping may be formed very early, and should be. If a young child be healthy, let no nurse (or anxious mother) sit with it in the evening, after it is three months old. Undress it, leave it, and let it put itself to sleep. The child will thank you afterwards for what you hate to do to-day.

8. An india-rubber bag full of cracked ice, ready to apply to a hot forehead, is a good friend, — when you have a hot forehead at two o'clock in the morning.

9. But I have found a small flat-iron more convenient. Buy at a toy-shop for ten cents a baby-house flat-iron. It need not weigh more than half a pound. Tie a string to it, and fasten the other end of the string to a bedpost. If you do not sleep hold the flat surface to your forehead — well, as long as you can bear it; then let it drop away, while you enjoy the retreat of the blood from the crowded blood-vessels.



How to Exercise

225

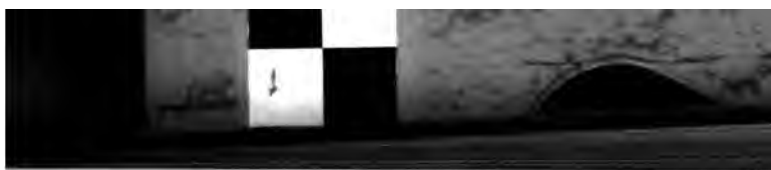
CHAPTER IV

HOW TO EXERCISE

It is quite worth while to read carefully the theories of the best Greek authors about education, and, of our own race, to go as far back as Lord Bacon and Milton and Locke, to see what they say about it. For such reading saves us from that delusion of our own time which confounds education with book-learning, and almost takes it for granted that a man who has read a great deal is well educated. Now, any Greek who thought at all had a thorough respect for the body, if it was only as the physical tool which was to carry into effect the conclusions of the mind, and the demands of the soul. Paul went farther. He recognized the divinity of man's nature. He knew that, as James said, man could be a partaker of the divine nature. Paul squarely claims, therefore, that the body must be kept pure and holy, because it is the temple of the indwelling God. All this runs quite counter to the happy-go-lucky theory largely prevalent in our time, which supposes that if you have a doctor to cure the visible diseases of the body, the body may be left to take care mainly of itself. The average public school of America teaches reading, writing, and arithme-

tic, with, perhaps, a smattering of language, a smattering of physical science, and, possibly, of the higher mathematics. But as to any exercises which are to make the eye more sure, the hand more quick, the arm more strong, or the man more enduring, the average public school knows nothing of them. It sends the boys or girls out to recess. Perhaps an intelligent teacher airs the room, and that is all. The recent "craze," as I may call it, in the matter of athletics is a help in this matter, but it has its dangers also.

Indeed, every specialist is apt to think that he must make every pupil such another as he is himself. A music master will tell you you must practise the scales six hours a day. The chief of a gymnasium, who can lift two thousand pounds himself, wants his pupil to lift two thousand pounds. The president of an athletic club is eager to have some one "beat the records" in running or walking or leaping. Every one thus exaggerates his own specialty, forgetting that the whole business of education is to make a perfect man, well-balanced, rounded, if you please, and ready to do whatever duty comes next his hand. When Starr King was in the prime of his youth, not long before his death, Dr. Winship was showing how men could be trained to lift enormous weights. "He does not understand what I need," said King. "I have no occasion to lift half a ton, but I should like to go 2.40." "Two-forty" was then the standard for fast trotting, and King meant that he



How to Exercise

227

wanted to do promptly and well, in the best way, what he had to do. Here, in an epigram, is the statement of what one's "exercises" are for. They are the use of a part of every day so that, when duty comes, one may be ready for duty. And a man will not be ready for duty unless he has exercised in such fashion as shall make him ready. Young people read novels, and they fancy that when the time comes they will do as well as Harry or Jane does in the story. When you are presented of a sudden to Mr. Gladstone, you expect to answer his questions as readily as Harry did when he had that charming talk, in the book, with the Lord Chancellor. It will not come out so. Amadis stood three days on the bridge, holding it against all comers. But he could not have done this if he had not trained himself every day in all the exercises of knighthood.

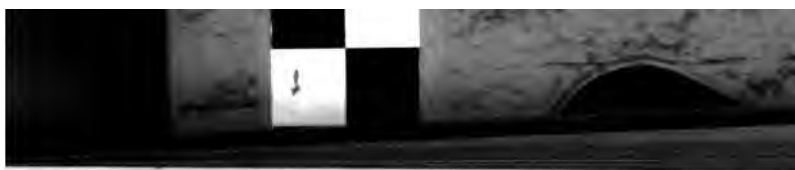
There may be bodily exercises; there are exercises of memory, imagination, and other forms, which we rate as simply mental; and there are spiritual exercises beside. Of these, I give this paper to some hints on bodily exercise, and when I write "How to Exercise" at the top, I do so because, in the ordinary language, exercise has come to be spoken of as if it related principally to the body. But, in derivation and in original use, exercise implies the experience which one gains in the repetition of any action.

1. People ask at once how much time should be given to this series of exercises or to that; how

much to study, how much to memory, how much to walking or to riding. I shall answer this question from no ideal standard of what one would like, or of what they do or do not do in Paradise, in Utopia, or in Sybaris, but with simple reference to what can be done in the ordinary life of this country.

For there exists among us, quite low down and fundamental in our arrangements, the necessity of earning our living, and, whatever a man wants or does not, and whatever John Milton or Pestalozzi or De Gérando says he had better do or not, the probability is as nine to one that he has to go to the mill or the store or the shop or the field every day, and work at some work or other in "subduing the world." The probability is that he must do this for eight or ten hours each day, and he may have to give more hours. I hope not. I hope, indeed, that we shall come round to the average of an eight-hour system by and by for all work which a man does in his craft, trade, or profession, so that he may feel at ease, with a good conscience, to give some of his waking hours to some "exercises" which will train his body, mind, and soul, beyond and outside the exercise which they gain in his daily calling.

I give such advice as is to be found in this paper, remembering this restriction. I have already said a man must do the duty that comes next his hand. Now that duty may be the keeping a set of books. It may be the watching a



How to Exercise

229

shuttle as it flies backward and forward in a loom. It may be sitting in a chair all day, and purifying mercury. For the exercise of his body, such a man must take time outside this daily requisition; for some exercises of his mind, he must take such time; and for some exercises of his soul.

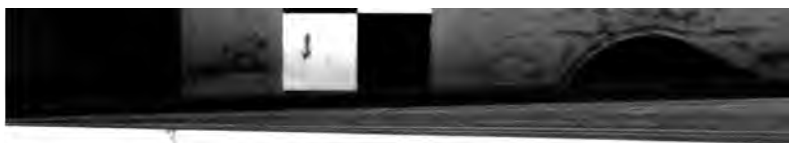
I am apt, then, to advise people who ask my advice in such things to limit their resolutions about them at the first, to the control of three hours a day, outside those which are given to what may be called the daily vocation. If a man's daily vocation keeps him in the open air, exercising his muscles, his nerves, — or in general his body, — the three hours need not be given to physical exercise. If, on the other hand, they are given to indoor work, as in the cases described, he will need to give much of his three hours to physical exercise. He must give a fair share if he means to be a perfect man. He must have his body up to a working standard. He does not gain that by resolving. And he has no right to expect any answer to his prayers, unless he fulfils the part God requires of him.

“Two men are in a canoe in the Mozambique Channel. A sudden flaw of wind upsets the boat. Before they can right her she fills with water and sinks; and the two men are swimming for their lives. ‘Ah, well!’ says one of them to the other, ‘it is a long pull to the shore; but the water is warm and we are strong. We will hold by each

other, and all will go well.' 'No,' says his friend, 'I have lost my breath already; each wave that strikes us knocks it from my body. If you reach the shore,—and God grant you may!—tell my wife I remembered her as I died. Good bye! God bless you!'—and he is gone. There is nothing his companion can do for him. For himself, all he can do is to swim, and then float, and rest himself, and breathe; to swim again and then float, and rest again,—hour after hour, to swim and float, swim and float, with that steady, calm determination that he will go home; that no blinding spray shall stifle him, and no despair weaken him; hour after hour, till at last the palm trees show distinct upon the shore, and then the tall reeds, and then the figures of animals;—will one never feel bottom?" Yes, at last his foot touches the coral, and with that touch he is safe.

That story that man told me. I copy it here because it shows, in a good concrete case, what exercise had done for one man which it had not done for the other. Both of them, for all I know, had strength, bravery, and prudence; but one of them had exercised his body in the essential exercise of swimming, and the other had not. When the test came, one knew how to live, and the other went under.

I certainly do not expect to give much advice in detail in regard to the several exercises of the body which a boy or a girl, a man or a woman would do well to keep up, daily, weekly, yearly.



How to Exercise

231

Lives differ so much that the advice for one man would be quite different from that for another.

The directions for most women — as we live, would be different from that for most men. But there may be stated a few things which are central, or fundamental: —

1. To live well, you must be in the open air every day. This rule is well-nigh absolute. Women offend against it terribly in America. And women are very apt to break down. Rain or shine, mud or dust, go out of your house, and see what God is doing outside. I do not count that an irreverent phrase which says one feels nearer God under the open sky than he is apt to do when shut up in a room. I know a very wise man who used to say, "People speak of going out, when they should speak of going in." He meant that you do plunge into the air, as when you bathe at the sea-side you "*go into*" the water. Be quite sure of your air-bath. I will not dictate the time; but, on the average, an hour is not too long. You will fare all the better, will eat the better, digest the better, and sleep the better, if instead of an hour it is two hours or more.

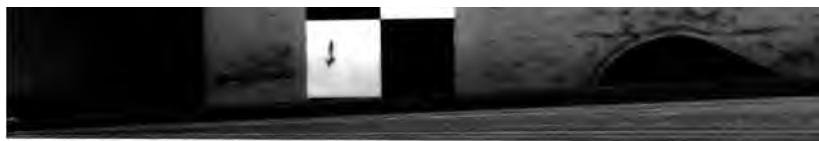
A good many other things go with this. Form the habit, if you have regular reading to do, of reading in the open air. Find a nook in some corner of the house, — on the outside of the house, — or between two great rocks, where you can sit in the sunshine, even in late autumn or in the winter, and read your Chautauqua lesson under

the open sky. Very likely you will find at first a certain strain on your eyes. You must, of course, be careful about this. But ask yourself whether your eyes were made only for rooms lighted by one or two windows, and whether they ought not to be exercised up to daylight.

2. Those people who are fortunate enough to read these papers on the western side of the Alleghanies, will, in most instances, be fortunate enough to have each a horse at command. Such is one of the every-day luxuries of those States which rule America; and one of the reasons why they rule America is that their people are tempted to live so much in the open air. If you are so fortunate, there is, I suppose, no exercise better for health than horseback-riding, whether for man or for woman. The rest of us, excepting the few who have bicycles at command,¹ have to walk as we take our air-bath.

Walking does not, of itself, exercise all the muscles. Running is much more approved by the authorities. I happen to know that Helmholtz, the great German physicist, recommends daily running as the best treatment, where there is any tendency to congestion of blood on the brain. Military drill has immense advantages. This nation has gained a great deal in the superior carriage of its men since the civil war. I could wish that the teachers of girls' schools would do something for their pupils which approaches it.

¹ This was in 1886.



How to Exercise

233

Sweeping a floor is admirable exercise, and you know Herbert says: —

“Who sweeps a room as for thy laws
Makes that and the action fine.”

3. No exercise, perhaps, can be compared to swimming; but generally in our climate we can enjoy it only a few months in the year. All women should learn to swim, as well as all men. It is really unfair to their brothers or their husbands if they do not.

4. Another set of questions will come up, which different people will answer in different ways. I have simply to remind my readers that they must be answered in some way. For instance, a man or woman must be in good training for walking. If the man be a postman, the government will expect him to walk twenty miles a day. If he be a light-infantry man, he must be able to walk fifteen miles a day, and to carry a knapsack, cartridge-box, and musket. Now, what is the requisition for a gentleman or lady in ordinary life, who is not a postman or a light-infantry man?

The answer would be different in England from what it is here. Their climate on the whole permits of walking more than ours, and they are on the whole trained for longer walks than we are. Here, I should say that every man ought to be able to walk six miles a day without any sense of extra exertion or fatigue — I know no reason why a woman should not. Indeed, I think it would be

much better for the women of this country if they were all trained to this standard. As these pages pass the press, I see that President Eliot tells the freshmen of Harvard University that they ought to be able to walk ten miles a day on the average as a matter of course. In the same address, he says that a man should be able to hoe potatoes for three hours without any sense of fatigue.

5. But it must be understood in all such suggestions that we are not urging you to use up your strength on exercise. I am not speaking as if exercise were your business, I am only speaking of preparation for your business. If your business is study, keeping store, taking care of children, making boxes, shoeing horses, you are to use your vital force, your strength, for those duties. You are not, under the pretence of exercise, to unfit yourself for the duties of the day. I once knew a club of young enthusiasts, men and women, who used to walk before breakfast summer mornings. It is an exquisite time of day, and they had what the New England dialect calls "beautiful times." But when they came back after two or three hours, and ate a sumptuous breakfast, as they used to, they found themselves quite unfit for the duties of the day, for making clothes, writing sermons, advising clients, or painting pictures. This is what in slang phrase is called "running exercise into the ground." Such exercise is no longer preparation for living. Remember all along that our business is to keep the body up to



How to Exercise

235

the highest point, that we may get from it all the work we can.

6. And remember, in the arrangement of your physical exercises, another series of them, which does not come at all under the head of athletics. I wish I could give more room to speaking of them than I can, but I must at least name them. People are apt to call them "accomplishments." But, as people live in civilized society, some of these are as necessary as, in the middle ages, swimming or fencing or riding were to a gentleman.

One of them is writing. Writing is learned and is kept up by physical exercise. Every man and every woman ought to write well. That is, they ought to write quickly, in a handsome hand which is easily read. And every man and woman can do this by proper exercise of the hand and arm, with or without a teacher. I have known people who wrote execrably, reform entirely in a fortnight's time by working faithfully, as you may work, on the copies of a writing-book which may be bought for ten cents.

Every one who can learn to write can learn to draw. In fact, writing is rather a difficult sub-department of drawing. I think every one should train himself to draw accurately, so far as to be able to represent in proper proportions what he sees. If a man wants a book-case made by a carpenter, he ought to be able to make a correct drawing of it for the workman, which shall not look as if it was tumbling over to the right. The

reason, by the way, that the drawings of unskilled people always slant to the right is, that they learn to write before they draw. Vertical writing will help here as in other ways.

Exercise in music is another of these accomplishments. Here the test is, do you like it? If you like it, you ought to keep it up so far as to give pleasure to yourself, or to give pleasure to your friends. For here is one more capacity of the body, and you have no right to let that capacity die out. Remember what the body is, what it is for, and who is its master.

Indeed, if in these three essentials, you will carefully keep a fit reverence for the body, you will be able, better than I can, to adjust for yourself the physical exercises of your life.

NOTE

Reprinting this paper in 1899, I am able to cite James Russell Lowell on the open-air requisite. In the first of his Lowell lectures, recently exhumed by the Rowfant Club, he says of the Ballad-Singers that they "had that education for uplifting which comes from life in the open air, and from that only."



CHAPTER V

APPETITE

WHAT has been said relates to the training of the body that it may do what man orders. It remains to consider another form of training which has the same end, but which seeks the control of appetites which, if uncontrolled, become masters, and control the man.

It is from the neglect of these appetites, and from the mastery which they thus attain, that there has sprung all that ascetic scorn of the body to which I have alluded, and which, unfortunately, still has its part in education, and in too many of the plans of religious teachers.

Take, as an illustration of such sway of these appetites and the failure to govern them, this, the story of the opium war in China. Keying, a mandarin of high rank, was sent to Canton by the Chinese government to suppress the illicit traffic in opium with the English. He began by giving a great dinner party. To this party he invited all the first Chinese merchants in Canton who might be concerned in the traffic. It was a great honor to be invited, and they gladly went. When the dinner was over they expected to go home; but they were then courteously informed

by their host that he should ask for their company for a longer time. Bedrooms would be provided for them, and he would hope to see them at breakfast. In fact he provided everything which a large hospitality could suggest, except opium. They could not have that. The next morning some of them began to break down for the need of it. Before a day went by, though they knew it was death to confess their appetite, they were confessing it. If he would only give them a little opium, he might do what he pleased with them afterward. And the story says that before this terrible test was finished, every man of the party had broken down. Every man had gone so far in this terrible indulgence that he could not live unless he might gratify it. They were, one and all, at Keying's mercy.

We are to look at the means for keeping appetite under control. In every case which can be named, the appetite which gains such head is God-given, and is, up to a certain point, necessary to maintain human life. But whether one speak of the desire for sleep, the desire for food, the desire for drink, or any other desire of the body, it may, like a pet leopard or a pet cobra, get the upper hand and devour or poison the foolish master. I will even include the case of the opium-eaters, for there can be no doubt that opium has its place. There was an English physician in India who said in his enthusiasm that opium was God's best gift to man.



Appetite

239

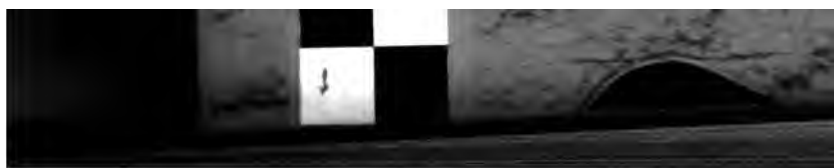
Now, in answering the question What are we to do with these appetites? I group my suggestions under two heads.

I. I speak of the TESTS of the machine, for it is all-important that you know where you are. For this, especially in early life, a man or woman needs certain tests. They may be compared to the occasional experiments which the driver of a locomotive makes to see where the water is in his boiler. If his engine has no index to teach him, he will open a vent from which will issue water or steam. He will then know whether the water or the steam is above that line. Now, strictly speaking, the man wastes force in opening this discharge; but he gains very essential knowledge. He learns whether the water is high enough or not. If he did not know, he might run on till an explosion came, and then the steam he had saved would not save him or any one.

In exactly the same way it is well for us all to test our bodies and the appetites which ought to be our slaves. Try once a month how well you feel without coffee. If you can do without it for two days, then you may take it up again. If you find you are fretful or cross because you have no coffee, keep on without it until you regain your temper. You do not mean to be a slave to your coffee-pot. I give just the same advice to smokers. For myself, I wish they would not smoke at all. I think the habit brings in a train of other habits. I fancy Keying's opium slaves began with slavery

to tobacco. But the injunction I give to smokers is, test yourself. Find out if you are slave or master. Go for a week without your cigar or pipe. If at the end of the week you are as easy in mind and body, as good-natured, as "well-balanced" as you were, then you have a right to say to me that you were not a slave when the week began. But if you cannot say this, then it is quite time that you could. If you find you are fretful, nervous, excited, low-spirited, uneasy, because a certain leaf from Virginia or from Cuba has not been rolled up in a certain form and lighted in a certain way, then you find that you are very near to personal slavery. It is quite time that you threw off that slavery, and your test has come none too soon.

It was from the need of such tests of the machine, as I suppose, that the institution of religious fasts came in. Here is a man who says he is in training to go into the wilderness and preach the gospel. If he does go, he will have to wear the same clothes night and day for months; he will have to live on the coarsest food; he will have to sleep on the ground. Can he do it? Let us try him before he goes. Do not let us send on a business of the first importance a man who, when he comes to his place of work, will be whimpering and worrying because he has no roast goose and apple-sauce for dinner, and no feather-bed to sleep upon. Here, I think, was the origin of the rules of fasting imposed upon priests and monks. And I suppose these passed from them to other persons who hoped to



Appetite

241

gain their sanctity. Other fasting originates in the remark early made, that the mind is more clear when people have not taken an overdose of food,—which the savage is very apt to take.

Now this test of the man who offered himself for important duty is wholly legitimate. I know religious bodies which profit by it now. In most Roman Catholic institutions for the training of priests, the young student lives in a barrack which is by no means agreeable or luxurious. His food and clothes are of the simplest kind. He is never alone; he always has one, two, or perhaps forty companions. By such discomforts he is trained at that age when habits are most easily formed. Now there are very few posts in life in which that man can afterward be placed, in which some of the most important conditions shall not be decidedly more agreeable. In a mission among Indians, he can have his own cabin. He will probably make for himself a better bed, and it will not be long, indeed, as he improves the civilization of the people under his charge, before he has better food on his table, or, at the least, a more varied bill of fare than he had at the seminary. That man learns something in his theological school which Andover, New Haven, and Auburn do not always teach.

Here is the advantage, in our education of young people, of giving them a chance to go camping out sometimes. Let them learn how bad the coffee is which they make themselves, and they will not be so apt to abuse Bridget that her coffee is not

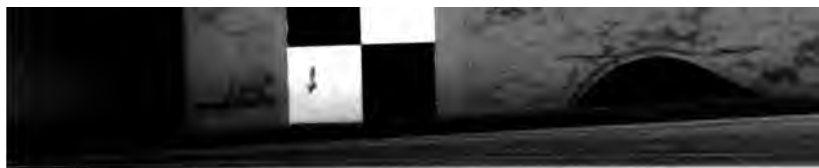


better. Let them see how hard it is to bring the fried fish and the toast to the table, hot, crisp, and unburned, and they will not be so often discontented with the varied courses of their home breakfast.

I once tried to comfort a forlorn mother whose two sons were going to the war, by talking to her of the education of a campaign. "I should like to know what Dick and John are to learn," said she. I said they were to learn how to eat their rice out of the same tin can in which they had made their coffee, and to be thankful that they had rice, coffee, and can. Well, she was willing to acknowledge to me that both of them were a little particular if the buckwheat cakes were cold when they came late to breakfast. When I heard of the young men next, when war was over, they were great leaders of industry on the western frontier.

Test yourself where you can test yourself safely. If you think you will have to walk across a river on a felled pine tree, try walking upon a pine tree when and where there is no river below you.

Is my appetite as good as it was when I was eighteen years old and was glad to breakfast or to dine on such food as we had at the boarding-house in Cranberry Centre, or in the forecastle when we were fishing on the banks? Or can I only keep good-tempered when I have turtle-soup for my dinner, with all the accessories of Delmonico's? I ought to be able to answer these questions, and any test by which I can answer them will be a help to me.



Appetite

243

II. But, alas! there are only too many instances in which no experimental test is needed. Life has been the test. The husband and the wife have both found that he is cross when the bread is sour. Or the master has found that the clerk is late at the store, that he missed the morning train which should have brought him in; and it proves that he cannot tumble out of bed in time in the morning. Or, worst of all, John or James finds out that when Dick or Harry meets him on the street, and asks him if he will not look in at Bet's to "have a drink," he does not say no. He "looks in" too often, and it is clear to all men that his appetites control him, and he does not control them.

Here comes the second half of our subject. How is the man, who should be the ruler, to regain this lost mastery?

I. In the first place, he must try. He must want to do it. Nobody else is going to do it for him.

Here, I think, we may generally trust him. I think that in the effort to reform intemperate men we generally waste time on this part of the business. My experience has shown me that no man knows the curse and tenor of drunkenness more thoroughly than the drunkard himself does.

I was once lecturing in a course on the "Divine Method of Human Life." In the course, one lecture was announced on this very subject of "Appetite." That was the whole announcement. Nothing was said of temperance or intemperance,

except as that one word indicated it. When I rose to speak, I saw at once, in my audience, three men who had never been at any of the other lectures. Nor did they ever come to any of the after lectures of the course. I knew in an instant why they came. They did not know each other. They had come without any mutual communication. But, as it happened, I knew them. Each of the three had broken down in intemperance. Each of the three had pushed to that terrible verge which is called delirium tremens, and they knew what that is. Each of them had seen this word "Appetite" in the newspaper, and he knew only too well what that is. Each of these three had come round to hear me speak, in the faint hope that I might know or suggest something which he did not know for the control of appetite. I believe that you will find something of that sort to be the case with almost all intemperate men, perhaps with all of them. They are, of course, men of weak will. That is only another way for saying that their appetites master them. But it does not follow that they are such fools that they do not regret the mastery, and do not wish to overthrow the master. They are often foolishly self-reliant. I said to such a man one day: "You will never succeed in conquering this temptation, unless you ally yourself to other people in the matter, unless you gain the help of sympathy and coöperation." He answered very proudly that I did not know what I was talking about. He had



Appetite

245

seen the folly of drinking, much more thoroughly than I had, and he knew more of it. He had resolved. That was enough. He should never touch liquor again. And he wanted no one to help him in that resolution. Of all which the result was that, before a month was over, he was arrested as a drunkard in the street; and it did not need more than two years to bring about the fourth and fifth acts of that tragedy, — his divorce from his wife, and his death in delirium tremens.

2. But I am not writing simply of intemperate people. I am writing for and of all people who cannot control bodily appetite. I was once sitting in a large circle of ministers who were discussing the central questions regarding "sin," and discussing them most eagerly. I turned suddenly upon the moderator, and said: "Why do we talk about sin? Let us apply what you say to *sins*. What was the last *sin* which you consciously committed? Does what you say apply to that sin?"

He is one of the truest men in this world. And he was then. He replied at once: "That is good. I will tell you. I was thinking, when I spoke, that I lay in bed this morning full ten minutes, when I knew perfectly well that I ought to be up and making ready for the day."

As he spoke every man in the room laughed. And I think that thirteen men — consecrated and true men — confessed that the appetite or temptation they had had in mind, in all they had said,

was this wish of "a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep."

Now I have said already — in the second paper of this series — what I think of sleep, and how highly I prize it. All the more am I sure that a man must hold the love of it under his absolute control. He must determine. Remember that *determine* is a better word than "resolve." He is to fix a *term* for sleep. He is to fix it, and, where he has fixed it, it is to remain fixed. Let me take my illustration, then, from this temptation which troubled the fourteen ministers.

You have fixed your moment for rising. It is to be at 6.30, or is it to be at 7. Now the fact that you say at 9 to-night that you will rise in the morning at 7 will help. But that alone will not control. Analyzed, what happens is this. You say: "I, John Jones, at 9 in the evening, being of sound, disposing mind and good memory and health, resolve that I will rise from bed at 7." If this is all, there is nothing to make sure that at 7 you do not say: I, "John Jones, being of sound, disposing mind and good memory and health, resolve that I will not rise till 8." You have nothing, so far, outside yourself, against which to push your oar. When you are in a boat, you can pry against the water, — and so your boat goes along. You lift your oar into the air to bring it back, and that motion does not send the boat backward. But when you are in a balloon, you have no water. It is all air. You move your



Appetite

247

paddle forward, and then you have to move it back, and you do not move the balloon at all. John Jones must find something outside himself for his oar to push against.

You will find, then, if six people agree that they will breakfast together, and that no one shall begin until all meet, that they will hold very closely to their agreement. There is then a contract which John Jones has made with X and Y and Z and A and B. Yes, I know that he may be so selfish, which is to say so far gone, that he will sacrifice them all; but the chances are greatly the other way. If he is so far gone, here is a very acute case of disease, worth his consideration and theirs.

Here, then, is another case, where we find out, as we have done, the value of the "together." We find out once more that man is a gregarious animal. We find out why the Saviour speaks to us so often in the plural number,—why we pray to "*our*" Father,—why the communion of men and women with each other is urged so steadily by all the masters of life. We find out that we are to bear each other's burdens. We find out what dear Owen Feltham meant when he said: "I think that man will never go to heaven who thinketh to go thither alone."

You are to make yourself, in some way, a part of the company,—a partner in its concern. When morning comes, and the bed is so warm, and the pillow is so soft, and you are so lazy, you are not to say, "Really, I would rather stay here than

have warm coffee," or, "Really, I would rather stay here than take the train at 8." You are to say, "I must be dressed at 7.30, or I shall disappoint Tom or Mary or Philip, or I shall fail in my appointment with Seth or Salome." The partnership breaks down if one of the partners fails, and you do not mean to be that partner.

3. Here is the place where I ought to speak of diminishing temptation while one strengthens will. The Saviour places this part of duty first. He tells us to pray that we may not be led into temptation. He knows that when the spirit is willing the flesh is weak.

Fitzwilliam says, and I think it is true, that many a man has strength of will enough to kick the bedclothes off, while he has not strength of will enough to leave the bed while they are on. That is a good illustration of a man's power over the temptations which environ him. The Duke of Wellington went so far as to sleep on a narrow camp-bedstead to the very end of his life. "When a man needs to turn over," he said, "it is time for him to turn out." I think this goes too far. But the theory of the duke is the right one. He did not mean to be led into temptation.

And here is the ground I take in the steady battle against the saloon in our villages and cities, and against the open bar. I do not think that we ought to put temptation in the way of boys or girls who have never been tempted, or of weak men or women; and, indeed, I know no men and

women who are not weak. So I say that the public ought not to sell liquor to be used away from home, "to be drunk on the premises," as the licenses say. To which the theorists reply that I am limiting the citizen in his natural rights. John Stuart Mill, for instance, says that if a private man wishes to be drunk he has a right to be drunk, — that, if he is not an officer of the State, the State has no right to control him. I think Mr. Mill doubts whether a man has not a right to commit suicide, though he does not, I believe, express himself clearly here. To all which I reply that, in suppressing the open bar, the State does not open this question of a man's or a woman's right to be a drunkard. The State says simply that it will not put temptation in the way of boys and girls who are certainly under its care; nor of men and women who, having been tempted, have failed and fallen, to the great injury of the State, as well as of themselves. The State will limit their temptations as far as it may.

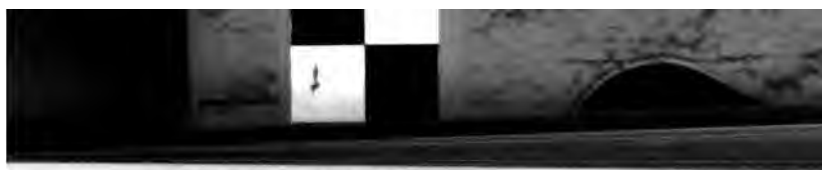
I was once, when under age, so that I could not well command, on a pedestrian excursion in the wilderness of Maine. Before we started, an admirable guide — I hope he lives to read these lines — came to tell me what stores he had laid in for the tramp. "I have bought no liquor," he said. "You young gentlemen must provide what you want." I said that none of the "young gentlemen" used liquor, but I said, what I would not say now, "You will take what you need." "Ah!"

said he, "no men take liquor into the woods. When lumbermen go into their camp they take the best of pork and the best of flour, but they take no liquor. If you ever have to work on a drive of logs, Mr. Hale, with eleven other men, if you are all to be drowned because one of them has not his wits about him, you will take care that that man has no liquor." This was said to me in the year 1841. He added that when the men came home in the spring and were paid off they might drink; but they could not afford to have any one in the company drink while they were dependent on each other. I have fancied that in this lumberman's reasoning might be found the origin of the "*Maine Law*."

To return; whatever the appetite you have to master, reduce the temptations in whatever way you can. Recollect how you broke down last, and put out of the way, in advance, the temptation that was too much for you then. A second victory in such a thing is generally easier than the first.

4. Do not talk too much of your temptation, and do not think of it too much. Overcome evil with good. If you have been reading low books, put them into the fire and provide yourself with the best books. Do not put them on the shelf, and do not sell them at auction. Sacrifice must come in with your determination.

5. And this implies that you think of others more than you think of yourself. To return to



Appetite

251

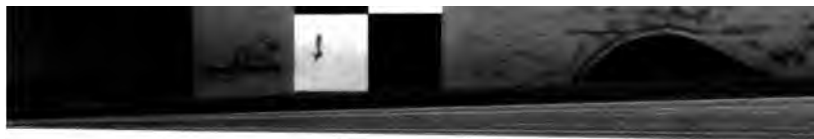
the trial, always present, of intemperance. The chief of a great Washingtonian Home told me that he never knew a man break up habits of intemperance, while he only tried to break up his own. He must try to break up some other man's. He must be thinking of that other man, caring for him, praying for him, working for him. Then his own temptations become less and less, and his will stronger and stronger. The history of the origin of the Washingtonian Movement in Baltimore illustrates this perfectly, and may be studied to great advantage. Gough, Hawkins, and the rest saved themselves by forgetting themselves and trying to save others.

6. To go back to the first principles again; all you have done by your resolution, even if you call it a determination, is to empty your house and clean it. You have cleaned it and you have garnished it. You have bought flowers for it. You have sent for new furniture. Very pretty furniture it is. But are you fool enough to have the house empty? Do you not know, has not the Master told you, that the devil you turned out will come and knock at the door? And if the door is locked, he will peep in at the window, and if the house is empty, he will jump in at the window. And then he will open the door, and put his head into the street, and he will whistle, and seven devils worse than he are waiting, and they will come and enter the house. Yes, and they will dwell there. And you, my poor fellow, are worse

off than you were, and this is because you left your house empty.

The moment you determine that you will change your life, determine what stimulus shall take the place of the stimulus you reject. You will be at work for others. You will seek new society. You will take new exercise. You will change your food. You will change your home, perhaps. Life shall be crowded full — too full for the old devil to find a corner for lodgment.

7. All this means, as we found in a similar matter before and as we shall find in every detail that ever grasps us, that we must make sure of the infinite alliance. This is the all-important help. It is very well to agree with X and Y and Z, with A and B and C, that we will work together tomorrow. But it is much more to agree with the good God that we will work with him. This is the King's work which I have undertaken. I am a fellow-workman together with him. I am on his staff. Nay, more than that, and better, I am his child. When I choose to do so, I partake of his nature. If in treading down temptation, and in selecting duty, I distinctly choose his work and purpose as the end and purpose which I will carry out, I shall not fail him, more than the aide of Napoleon failed Napoleon in the crisis of a battle. And in ways which no man can describe, but which no man doubts who has had experience, my Father will give me enough of the infinite strength to carry me through.



Appetite

253

NOTE

In the matter of intemperance, and the cure of it, too much cannot be said of the value, almost the necessity, of changing food, and, if possible, home, or our other habits.

Food, in particular, has much to do with this matter. If I owned a great factory where the men had exhausting work, I would have *bouillon*, or beef-tea, *on tap* at the door when they went out and in, and give it to every man who would drink. I am sure I should save, in the end, by the temperance of my workmen.

My dear friend, Olive —, who is now in heaven, saw with great pain that one of the men who came daily to bring her packages to the house, from the great warehouse where she dealt, was beginning to be a drunkard. She knew his employer was only too willing to turn him off. ~~She~~ determined to save him if she could. She made every day for him the glass of temperance bitters which was to keep him from looking in at McGullion's bar. A few chips of quassia soaked in hot water over night and then nicely strained give you the "bitters." "Mr. Jones," she said kindly, "you have very hard work, and I want you to drink my bitters twice a day." Dear child, what would he not do if she bade him? She never forgot to have the glasses ready for him, till they wanted her for other service, — I doubt if it can be better or higher.

CHAPTER VI

HOW TO THINK

IN a playful little poem by William Barnard, who was Dean of Derry a hundred and nine years ago, in answer to a challenge from Dr. Johnson, who had bidden him improve himself after he was forty-eight years old, he selects his teachers. Three of them are Sir William Jones, Adam Smith, Edmund Burke, and the fourth, Beauclerk. The lines are :—

“ Jones, teach me modesty and Greek ;
Smith, how to think ; Burke, how to speak ;
And Beauclerk, to converse.”

The man who should have Adam Smith as a teacher in the art of thinking would be fortunate, if the teacher could really bring his pupil near to his own level. And in the midst of the modern philosophizing, I will say to any quiet, intelligent person, who does not dislike common-sense, that he will find the books of Jones to be good reading to-day.

Capel Lofft says, in his curious book on “Self-Formation,” that the elder D’Israeli says that no person has ever written on the “Art of Meditation.”



How to Think

255

I have not been able to find the statement by D'Israeli; but Capel Lofft says that he has spent much time in verifying it, and he believes it to be true.

He goes further and says that not one man in twenty ever does think; by which he means that very few men think to any purpose or with any system. I am afraid that this statement is true. Most of the people one meets in the world take their opinions ready-made from the newspapers or their neighbors or, in general, from the fashion.

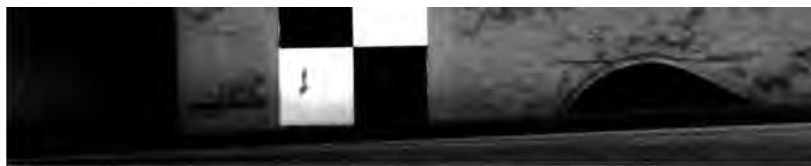
There is indeed a habit, for which two causes could be found, of taking it for granted that men cannot control their thoughts. It is said squarely that thoughts come or go wholly without the choice or power of the man. But this is not the theory of the great men, of the real leaders. They bid us control our thoughts, that is, to learn to think, just as we control any other appetites. Paul tells us what we are to think of, and he goes on to the other matter, which is more dangerous, and tells us what we are not to think of. There are things which are not even to be spoken of, and with an allowable paradox Paul tells what they are. It is only writers of a lower grade who seem to take for granted that you must let thoughts go or come at their reckless pleasure or by the mere chance of what may be the condition of the circulation of blood upon the brain. Such writers, if they were pressed, would have to say that you are not to undertake any control of bodily appetites, any



more than you undertake the control of mental processes.

But the truth is that Man is master of mind, and master of body, if he WILL. This is the privilege of a child of God, and a true man asserts his empire and uses it. I do not say he can begin all of a sudden in such control, if he had never used it before. But he can learn how to gain such control. He can have more to-day than he had last Tuesday, and he can have more next Tuesday than he has to-day. This is what is meant by learning to think. Thus a man may train his memory to do better work for him this year than it did last year. True, when the body begins to fail, the memory may begin to fail in its mechanical processes, but none the less shall that man find that the eternal realities of past life are his. Thus it will happen that a man tells you that he cannot remember, when he has never taught himself to perceive, or to observe.

Mr. Ruskin goes so far as to say that all which we call genius for fine art is simply an admirable memory. He constantly recurs to this. Claude Lorraine and Turner paint the sky well; for they well remember what they have seen. It seems certain that the faculties even of the observation of color may be improved by exercise. Any foreman in a dry-goods shop will tell us how fast the boys improve in their study of color; and it is well known to oculists that women, because they have been trained for generations in matching colors,



How to Think

257

have become more precise in this business than men are. It occurs to me, as I write, that one of the most brilliant and successful colorists I know among American artists began life in a dry-goods shop. What drudgery he thought it then! And has he perhaps lived to think that drudgery a blessing?¹

We begin then, as we always begin, by demanding determination; the will must act, and act imperiously. "I will think on this subject." This implies what the writers call concentration; just as we found that in putting himself to sleep a man must make sleep his whole business, — first, second, and last, he must devote himself to sleep, — so now he must devote himself to thinking on this one subject and on no other. There is a great advantage in the training of our public schools. Boys and girls learn to study without attending to the work of the school-room; or if they do not they throw away a great opportunity. You ought to be able early in life so to concentrate thought that in a railway carriage you can close your eyes, take up a subject of thought, and hold to it for a reasonable time, perhaps till you have done with it. At all events you ought to be able to lay by the subject for future reference, ticketed, so that you may know how far you have advanced with it and where you are to begin another time.

You determine, for instance, to think about a protective tariff. How much do I know of it and

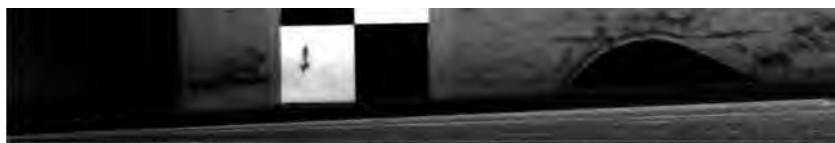
¹ The reference is to Mr. Bradford, the painter of Arctic pictures.

where am I ignorant? What are the foundations of my knowledge? How sure are they, and where can I improve on them? Now what follows clearly and surely on the premises? What is more doubtful, and how can I solve such doubt?

I do not believe that it is well to hold on long at a time upon the same topic. I think it is better to take a subject to a certain point, then to ticket it, as I say, and lay it by prepared to take it up again. But when you take it up again do not begin at the old beginning and go over the old ground. Take what you have done for granted, and from the point where you are go forward.

In this matter, as in all other matters where will is involved, there comes in the necessity of energy. Capel Lofft, if you will look up his book, has a great deal to say about this, and goes back to the derivations of the Greek words. But it ought to be enough to say that you cannot think well unless you think with all your might. You cannot think lazily. You cannot think if you are half-hearted about it. You must somehow take interest enough in your work to follow it at the moment as if it were the only thing. Unless you work with your whole heart, the work cannot be wholly done.

Without going farther into detail, I must say something as to the necessity of the business in hand, and I will take the three departments of mental activity which we call memory, imagination, and argument, or reasoning. Although as old age comes on the mechanical processes of



memory may give way, a man who has trained his memory will feel himself sure all the same of the external realities of his life, though he may not be able to recall the letters of their names. So a man may train and enlarge his powers of imagination. Nay, he must, if he is to make any considerable advance in the larger life. Full one half of men's failures are due to their lack of imagination, or to their neglect to use imagination at the right time and in the right way. Once more, every man who is rightly and wisely to do his duty in the world among his fellows must train his power of argument. He must not stand by, helpless, when some wordy fool on a platform makes the worse appear the better reason. Memory, imagination, reasoning, then, are for us three good examples of the great necessity in which we must exercise our power. Of these three duties I will speak a little more in detail, not dwelling on what a man may do in training his perceptions, his power of concentration, his power of statement, or of conversation, and a hundred other faculties which come under the general statement that the man is to be master of the mind.

First, then, as to memory. Had one no other reason for training memory carefully, and keeping it in hand, here is the supreme reason; that one must keep ready at every instant of trial the determinations made in the moments of reflection. As I am always saying, Wordsworth defines the hero as he

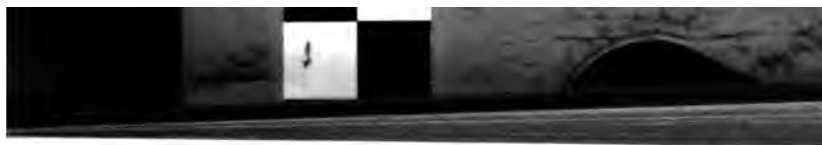
"Who in the heat of conflict keeps the Law
In calmness made, — and sees what he foresaw."

The little child untrained comes to his mother in grief because he has done wrong, and makes, probably, the true excuse, as he sobs out that he did not remember. The trained man, trampling temptation under foot, does remember. He remembers his resolution, and this re-enforces will. There is an interesting thought in the mere etymology of our word "conscience." "Conscience" is a Latin word, which means the knowledge all at once of all the elements involved. If my conscience is quick and strong, I know at once, and that once is now, all that I can know of this temptation. I know to what ruin it brings me; I know by what methods I can quench its fire; I know how to put my foot upon its head and the point of my sword at its throat. I know all this now.

"*Conscire*" is the Latin verb; to know at once the perceptions of the outward senses, the lessons of old experience, and the present verdict of the man within.

Charlotte Brontë refers to this necessity in that central passage, where she describes her heroine's conquest of immediate temptation.

"Laws and principles are not for the times when there is no temptation; they are for such moments as this, when body and soul rise in mutiny against their rigor. Stringent are they, inviolate they shall be. If, at my individual convenience I might break them, what



How to Think

261

would be their worth? They have a worth — so I have always believed ; and if I cannot believe it now, it is because I am insane — quite insane ; with my veins running fire, and my heart beating faster than I can count its throbs. Conscience and reason are turned traitors against me, and are charging me with crime. They speak as loud as feeling in its clamors. Preconceived opinions, foregone determinations are all I have at this hour to stand by."

But we need not go to poetry or fiction for our examples. The little child of whom I spoke comes to his mother, crying, and can only offer the apology that "he did not remember" that she had bidden him keep away from the stove. If his hand be not very badly burnt, she will not be very sorry ; because she now knows that he will remember better another time. Indeed, what Mr. Ruskin says of fine art, we may say of life. That all the training by which God is gradually changing us from babies into archangels is but so much accumulation by memory, more or less completely educated.

But this training of memory and this knowledge at one and the same time of the cause and consequence of the present temptation involves the right use of the imagination. The larger life, indeed, which is the purpose and object for which we live every day, requires me to command and control my imagination, to use it on the right errands, and to refuse it when it would fain travel the wrong way. The world in which I live may

be the cell of a wretched prison, cabined and confined as was the unfortunate dauphin, the son of Louis XVI., or as Kaspar Hauser was said to be, so that his prison walls touched him above, below, on the right hand and on the left, behind and before.

One is really almost as badly off as he is when he is in a crowded railway car after darkness has come on. I cannot talk to my next neighbor because he is a Moqui Indian, I can see nothing but the shadows from the smoking lamp, I can hear nothing but the clatter of the rail. This is hard circumstance. But what is circumstance to a trained child of God living by the divine order. I ought to be able to bid Shakespeare meet with Milton here. I may call Charles Dickens and Walter Scott into the interview. I may select the subject on which they shall talk, I may bid them say their say, and I may send them on their way. I may summon here all whom I have loved most in literature, be they people who have lived and breathed, or be they people who never had form or weight or visible body: such people as Jane Eyre or Di Vernon or Rosalind. I have them and they cannot leave me. The dead nausea of the disgusting car is forgotten, and in that prison cell I have enlarged my life to journey as I will.

I spoke of Mme. de Genlis. In her gossiping and entertaining memoirs, she goes at length into her habit of creating for herself an imaginary society.

The passage is worth the search of enterprising readers, though I am afraid the book has neither index nor contents.

Now for the same reason and for the larger life which all along we are seeking, you must train the faculty of reasoning, that you may have an opinion, and that opinion your own. To look on both sides and choose the better side, to dissect the rhetoric of a demagogue, to strip off his coat of many colors, and to show him for what he is, to decide between rival plans and to determine one's aim, for one's own purposes, by one's own abilities, — all this is the duty of a man. Without this he forfeits a man's privilege. He is a chip on the current, whirled down in this flood, whirled up in that eddy, or left stagnant in some standing pool. How often, alas, one meets a man who never knew the luxury of an opinion. He has taken his morning impression from one newspaper, his evening impression from another. Meanwhile he has been the tool and the fool of every person who chose to use him, or to tell him what to think and what to say. To keep clear of that vacancy of life, a true man cares diligently, lovingly, for the weapons which have been given him, weapons of defence, — yes, and sometimes weapons of attack, if need may be. He learns how to reason, how to search for truth, how to question nature, how to interpret her answers. He learns how to arrange in right order such eternal truths and such visible facts as relate to the

matter he has in hand. He clears and enlarges his power of reasoning.

The power of induction and deduction man has because he is a child of God. It is the faculty which distinguishes him from the brutes. A body of wolves in the Pyrenees may gather round the fire which a peasant has left, and will enjoy the warmth of the embers. A group of chattering monkeys on the rock of Gibraltar might gather so round the watchfire which an English sentinel had left burning. They can enjoy the heat; but they cannot renew the fire. They cannot work out the deduction which is necessary before one kicks back upon the glaring embers the black brand which has rolled away. Were it to save their lives, they must freeze before one of them can deduce from what he sees the law or the truth as to what he must do. Here is it that man differs from the brute. He can learn. He can follow a deduction. He can argue. He can rise, step by step, to higher life.

This he does when he takes the control of thought. He rises to a higher plane and lives in a larger life.

There is no neater or better illustration of the way in which a wise teacher draws out the thinking faculty of a child, than that which Warren Colburn borrowed, from Miss Edgeworth, I believe, to place in the beginning of that matchless oral arithmetic which still holds its place in many well regulated schools. The advantage which the think-



How to Think 265

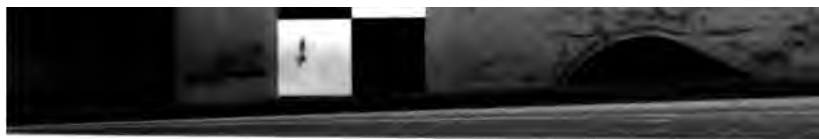
ing faculty gains from good training in mathematics cannot be overstated. A master in that business¹ used to say to me that, when you meet a man who says that he has no mathematical faculty, he is simply a man who was not well taught his "vulgar fractions" or his "rule of three" in childhood. I am inclined to think that this is true. A thousand writers have been eager to prove that good grammatical work does the same thing,—and I believe that they are right. It is just the same mental process by which I build up a Latin verb, pronoun, and noun, so that they shall express the fact that "George Washington had taken off his own hat before he met Henry Knox," as the process by which I work out the truth that seventy-two apples costing nine cents a dozen may be exchanged for two pecks of walnuts costing three cents and three eighths a quart. Why the parallel of the two studies of language and mathematics as mental gymnastics should have been so much belabored as it has been, I have never known.

This is certain, that no one learns to think without thinking. I believe we may say more. I believe he must make a business of thinking. He must take hold of the control of his thought intentionally, resolutely, and energetically. If he does this I believe he will think more clearly, and with better results next year than he does to-day.

¹ Nathan Hale, Jr.

NOTES

1. Capel Lofft's book which I have cited above is called "Self Formation, by a Fellow of a College." It has been reprinted in America, and will be found in the large libraries. It is a gossiping, entertaining book, professing to describe the "history of an individual mind," and has a good many practical hints, useful to young students. He is always talking of his great discovery, which to most people seems almost a mare's nest. Two pages, one in the first volume, one in the second, contain the whole of it. It amounts to this, — that in reading, you should stop at the end of each sentence and "re-flect," turn back on the sentence, to be sure that you possess its meaning. What follows will be, he says, that you must go through it *at one breath*, or if it be an unusually long one, that you give one breath to every member of it. On this business of our breathing, *in time*, he lays great stress, as a good teacher of swimming would bid you breathe in proper time with your strokes. When, in the second volume, we come to the great secret of the book, it proves that we cannot think, unless we think in time with our breathing. "I have already stated my conviction that the management of the breath is very important in conversation, in studious reading, and in oratory. I am just as thoroughly persuaded that this is true of meditation, that it governs in great degree the thinking faculty. . . ." "I de-



spatched every sentence," as he thought it, "in a breath, and then, doubling the blow, — a second idea having flowed into the interval of vacuity, — I applied myself to it in the same way, and so proceeded through the series."

It is evident that Lofft had never read Swedenborg. If he had, he would have cited the *Arcana Celestia*. "The reason," says Swedenborg, "why life is described in Genesis ii. 7, by *breathing* and *breath* is because the men of the most ancient church perceived states of law and of faith by states of *respiration*. . . . Concerning this respiration nothing can yet be said, inasmuch as it is a subject at this day altogether unknown; nevertheless, the most ancient people (those before the flood) had a perfect knowledge of it;" and Swedenborg refers to the same subject in page I,119, in the tenth book, of the *Arcana*. I think that Swedenborg was here referring, consciously or unconsciously, to Abraham Tucker (Ned Search), where he describes the method of inter-communication of souls in their "spiritual bodies."

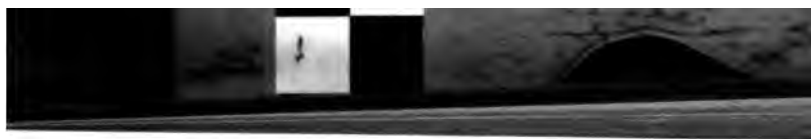
2. I have not dared go into the systems of what is called artificial memory. The best by far, I think, is in Gouraud's book, published with a good deal of fuss and feathers in New York forty years ago. Gouraud remembered everything so perfectly that we used to call him "the Wandering Jew."

All these systems depend on using the stronger side of memory, whatever it is, to re-enforce the weaker.



3. All that is said on the cultivation of the imagination shows the importance of giving to children enough fairy-tales and enough poetry with which to amuse themselves.

4. All that is said on the culture of the thinking faculty is to be remembered, seriously, by teachers who are in any danger of using text-books too much. The text-book, as an authority, injures the child's power to think. Make him work out the rule for himself,—if you can. That means, probably, if you know how to think yourself.



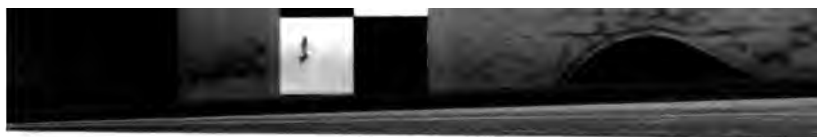
CHAPTER VII

HOW TO STUDY

THE perfection of methods of study seems to have been attained in the best work of the English colleges. A young man who wants to work engages a special tutor, who is technically called his "coach." This gentleman has made it his business to teach certain subjects. He has very few pupils, probably no more than four or five. You go to him, say, at eight in the morning. You sit at the same table and absolutely study with him. He gives you his personal help in the process of study. You look out your words in the dictionary together. Why, he would even show you technical details in handling the dictionary, if you needed; he would show you how to arrange your notes, and tell you the traditions of the best way to work. After an hour of such joint study, you would leave and work for three hours alone. At twelve or at one, perhaps, you would meet him again and all his other pupils, three or four, perhaps. For one hour you would then work all together on the subject or book which you had been working on separately. By such a system you seem to gain every advantage. You work with a superior, you work alone, and you and your peers work with a superior.

You must be dull, indeed, if you do not find in such a method full stimulus. The plan in such an outline as I have made gives, probably, the best period for daily work on books. Five hours such study is enough. You might read all day. Reading can hardly be called work. But reading with the purpose of study is quite a different affair from reading for mere amusement. When you are really working you had better not attempt more than five hours a day. And I do not believe in varying from the average. Of course there may be excuses for such deviation. But one should not plan with any idea of making occasionally what the French call a "turn of force" with which to overtake your omissions. College boys are apt to loaf through half a term, and think to make up by cramming at the end. You cannot do it. It is hard to loaf at the beginning of a day's march, and make up by a stiff pull in the evening. But that plan is much more likely to succeed than is the corresponding effort which treats the brain to a turn of laziness, and proposes to pick up dropped stitches by a spurt at the end.

We know curiously little about the methods of brain work. But we do know this, that the brain is very sensitive, and that its full faculty is very soon exhausted. Thus the best teachers of short-hand will tell you that when you have practised fifteen minutes on that art you had better wait — perhaps till the next day — before you practise again. In the same way Mr. Prendergast, the great teacher



How to Study

271

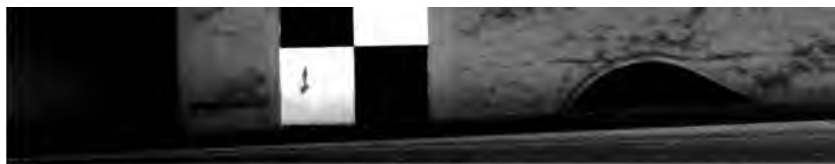
of language, says squarely that the power of acquiring words by memory is well-nigh exhausted in fifteen minutes. After you have studied so long on his exercises, he would like to have you wait for one or two hours. A friend of mine who studied with him went to him six times a day; the result of which was that at the end of six weeks this gentleman could speak German, though he understood nothing of it before. How sadly this makes me watch those wretched school exercises in which, after three unbroken hours, perhaps, the poor sensitive brain of the jaded child is expected to turn out as much and as good work as it did at the beginning. But this only applies to one line of study, which is, indeed, comparatively unimportant, namely, the committing words to memory. Fortunately, we have not a great deal of this to do. Even the difficulty of learning language is much exaggerated. And it is in learning language that this memory business, in its mechanical forms, is most called upon. Now, let it be observed that few of us in daily life, in what we speak and hear and write in letters, use more than three thousand words. Three thousand words is a very good vocabulary, whether for speaking or for understanding the speech of others. Suppose, then, that in learning a foreign language you learn thirty words a day. You must learn them thoroughly. You must not forget them. Day by day you must review and refresh your knowledge of them. In one hundred such days you will have



learned the three thousand words necessary for the vocabulary of your knowledge of a new language. In the same time you must learn the declensions of the nouns and the inflections of the verbs.

When one is in a foreign country he does this without much thought. He reads the words on the signs of the shops. He hears the talk of cabmen and omnibus-drivers. He has to order his own meals at times, or to give his own instructions about luggage. The reason why we spend years at home in gaining a poor smattering of some language which we might learn well in four months, is that at home we have, perhaps, a teacher who knows very little of what he teaches, and also that we turn away from the lesson in language to do something else, and think of something else, and come back to it almost as to a new and strange affair.

I think myself that we spend too much time in most of our schools in the study of language. When I was in Buda-Pesth, I asked a Hungarian gentleman, who was of just my own age, how he was taught Latin, a language which he spoke as easily as his own. He said he was sent to school at eleven years of age, and was told there that if, after a month, he was heard speaking any language but Latin, he would be whipped. You may be sure he learned a thousand words of Latin before that whipping period came. He was surrounded by boys who spoke it, his teachers spoke it, his books were written in it. You may almost say he could



How to Study

273

not help himself. We generally reverse all this. We keep the boy in an atmosphere of English. A teacher who has read only as much Latin in all his life as there is of English in two volumes of Dickens, undertakes, at intervals, to teach the boy a language of which he does not know much himself; and the usual result is that at the end of six or seven years of such mistaken effort, the boy throws the language over and says he does not care for the classics. We are apt to teach French in much the same way. How many girls are reading this paper in the Chautauqua course, who were compelled at school to "study French," perhaps for five hours in a week crowded full of other things? The result in this case is a slight acquaintance with the outside of the language, no confidence in it, no love of it, and not sufficient real knowledge to enable the student to read a French magazine or newspaper easily. It seems to me that it would be better, often, for the student to put off French entirely, till it will be convenient to give three months to it, and to nothing else, and then so to make herself mistress of the language that she can use it familiarly, almost as she uses her mother tongue. For this reason I always advise young people who have any control of their own studies, not to attempt at school the rudiments of two languages at one time, in general to study few languages at school, and to study those as thoroughly as the circumstances make possible.

I. We will return now from the study of language — which is merely an accidental detail — to what is much more important, namely, the general range of study by which we are to gain more knowledge of the truth than we had before.

We are not all of us so fortunate as to be able to work under the daily direction of first-rate teachers. I like, however, to call the attention of Chautauquan readers to the advantage which our system of work gives them. They generally can enlist the other advantage of those English college students, which is the prime advantage, indeed, of all college systems. I mean the sympathy and co-operation of other persons who are studying the same thing at the same time. I should not ask for many such associates, nor advise any one to seek for many. Three or four, I think, are better than nine or ten would be. But four people, one on each side of the same table, with the books of reference, the maps, and the paper and ink between them, make an admirable force for study, and, if they choose, they can achieve as much as can well be achieved in the same time. The good guessers will help the bad guessers; the imaginative will help the unimaginative; the practical will spur up the dreamers; and the dreamers will quicken the ideas of the practical. They must not quarrel. They must not be cross. No one must ever be cross, and no one must ever quarrel. But, granted this conquest of the imperfections of mortal nature, those four students



How to Study

275

are greatly to be envied by people who have to study alone.

The great danger to the student in our time is that he shall over-estimate the value of books, and not examine for himself or think for himself. The book carries an audacious pretence in its mere form. It seems impossible that mere trash shall have succeeded in writing itself, printing itself, in compelling somebody to read its proof-sheets, and at the last, in securing a good binder to put a good cover on it, and an honest book-seller to sell it to me for money. But alas! all this does happen. No man who knows anything dares say how large a portion of what is in books is worthless. And the more arrogant the book and the more bold its tone, the more certain is it that it is worthless.

The student, then, must always be on his guard against being the slave of his book. The book is a witness on the stand, presumed to be honest, but perhaps dishonest; a witness, however, who has probably had better opportunities than the reader, as to the matter in hand. The student is fortunate if there exist within his reach two books by different men, who look at his subject from different points of view. It is thus that the stereoscopic method of observation gives roundness and a natural effect to what is seen, precisely because there are two points of view. We gain such advantages when we can look through the eyes of two authors.

Recollect that generally, not always, you are reading to learn something of the subject, and that the knowledge of the book itself is only a secondary object. So soon, then, as the book branches off on something else than what you are studying, you may abandon it. Here is the principle of brave and good "skipping." in reading. So soon as the writer begins to talk of himself, of his quarrels or of his honors, you may generally abandon him, and turn over to find the place where he becomes a witness again. But, of course, it may be your object in reading to learn about the author himself, whether he is a poet or a philosopher, a man of sense or a fool.

It is a good practice to make your own index to the book you read, noting, on a fly-leaf at the end, those points which you yourself may be specially apt to need in the future. The notes are so many helps for your future reference, when you shall take down this book some day to find what its statement is. With a little practice you can make this index nearly alphabetical. Here is a specimen which will, I believe, explain itself.

Index to Vol. IV. of Carlyle's "Frederick the Great."

American Anarchy, 236.

Automaton Chess Player, 420.

Confederation, 314.

Free Trade, 270.

Globe of Compression, 235.

Lee's Papers, date of, 434.

Pulaski, 329.

What is Vienna MS.? 114.

I speak with a certain hesitation about the use of commonplace books or any sort of index in which a student attempts to make his own personal encyclopædia of things which he has read and thinks he may need to use. I kept such a book when I was a young student. It makes two large volumes now, and I often refer to it. But I have observed that since I have had much work to do I never make an entry in it. And I believe that such will be the experience of most students. Robert Southey is the only distinguished exception whom I remember, among English students of our time. His commonplace books are so curious that they have been published.

Probably the rule applies here which John Adams lays down for all diaries. He says that we only write diaries when time is plenty with us; but that, as soon as we have anything to tell worth telling, we have, alas! no time to write it down.

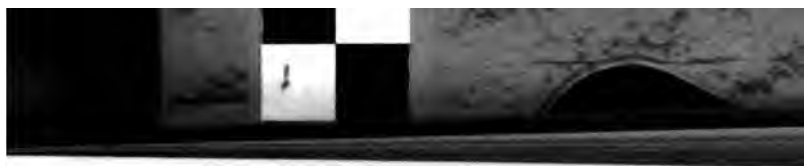
Perhaps it will be safe to let this rule work, and to make no attempt to fight against it. Let the young scholar who has time enough keep a book in which to refer to such things as he supposes he may need. Let him never copy into this book anything for other people to see or use. It is simply for his own purposes. Let him index this book carefully, by any of the convenient processes which have been invented by John Locke, and by many others. Into such a book he will copy, with

great reserve, the heads of what is vitally important in his reading, especially what he finds in strange places, where he would be apt not to look for it. A similar book may hold important cuttings from newspapers. But they are all useless, unless regularly indexed.

An accomplished friend of mine¹ has his own card catalogue which is his "personal index" to those statements which he has thought important enough to note in this way. It consists of more than ten thousand cards alphabetically arranged, referring to as many as ten thousand different topics, and telling where these topics are handled. This seems a very large index. But if, in the reading of every day he made only four such notes and put them in their places, which would cost him perhaps two minutes daily, he would have an alphabetical index of fourteen thousand topics in ten years.

II. This is all our limits will allow me to say of the study of books. The habits which I have been urging will form themselves, if, at the same time with the study of books, the student will have selected some one line in which he shall be carefully studying *things*; for the habit of accurate observation is an excellent corrective of that lazy disposition to take things on trust which is the special danger of mere book students. The great naturalist, Agassiz, was forever insisting on this, and he has done a great deal for the teachers and learners of this country by what he said.

¹ Mr. Frederic Beecher Perkins.



How to Study

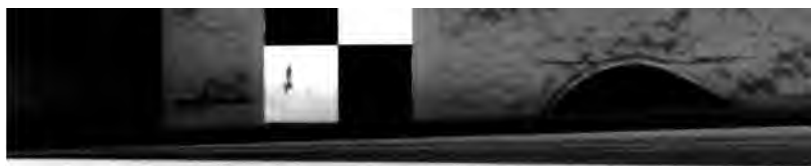
279

If, for instance, in the spring, you will begin to give a little time every day to real observation of the growth and habits of caterpillars and butterflies, you will find out what it is to learn systematically. Suppose you cage half a dozen caterpillars of different species, watch their growth, their cocoon spinning, their changes into moths or butterflies, and then observe the history of these ; suppose you keep a regular memorandum, day by day, of what you certainly know on these matters, and also of what you think you know, or conjecture. You may, to great advantage, teach yourself to draw at the same time. Thus, if you have secured a brood of caterpillars just from the egg, you will find that you can draw an accurate portrait of one of them, just as you see him. Make his portrait again and again, as he grows, so often as you observe any change in him. Or you may do the same thing if you are really studying the processes by which buds unfold or leaves enlarge and ripen.

I know an accomplished man who wanted to obtain the latest practical information on the subject of tanning, an industry in which steady improvement is made from year to year. He knew he could not get this from books. Instead of satisfying himself with books, he advertised widely that he would pay a handsome premium for the best essay he received from a working tanner on the newer processes of tanning. He offered a second premium for the second essay, and a third for the third. He got just what he asked for. He had

specially made the condition that he did not seek for literary excellence, and he did not propose to print the papers. He obtained three treatises, all of them, I think, written by men who had educated themselves, as we say, which he told me he believed brought the science of tanning up to the latest point. He told me that these manuscripts were to him well-nigh invaluable. Such is an illustration of the way in which such men as the writers of those papers can study a subject without the study of books. I do not know the names of these three men. But I do know where the circulation of *The Chautauquan* will be likely to carry these lines. And I take pleasure in saying here, therefore, that I have no doubt that these three writers have trained themselves to careful habits of daily observation, that they have some system in recording these observations, and that this has given them the ability which they have for expression. And I could not have a better illustration of what I mean by the study of a subject, apart from the study of books.

There is one branch of personal study, where one studies the subject and not a book, which I hope all students of Chautauqua may, in general, make their own. It is the study of the local history of the place where they live. Nothing is more pathetic and more annoying than the destruction which now takes place every year, almost under our eyes, of written documents which are of substantial importance for the history of the country. Besides



How to Study

281

this destruction, there is the inevitable destruction of landmarks of different sorts, which could at least be preserved in drawing for the interest of after generations. On the painted rocks of the Mississippi, a little above the junction with the Missouri, were ancient pictures of which the designs were so striking that Marquette thought the best painters in France would scarcely have done so well. The last of these pictures, the Piasa bird, is remembered by men now living. There were copies of some of them in a hotel in Alton in the early days of that city. But, if anybody have any accurate copies of these remarkable pictures now, he has not, I think, produced them for engraving or for study, and there seems to be danger that we have lost one of the most curious monuments of our early history. Such is one illustration, where there are thousands, of the way in which the knowledge of our own history is dying out. Now it is in the power of every student in our course to study with care the history of the county where he lives. He must question old people. He must look up and copy documents. He must be able to refer travellers and other inquirers to the proper sources of information.

So satisfactory is such study of a subject itself; so much more profitable is it than the mere study of books, as books, that you may say quite safely that it gives to the student that self-respect which any one has who adds to the stock of human information. Four times out of five, if you will

choose some line of observation in which you have, by whatever circumstance, some little vantage-ground — if you do not take too wide a subject, and if you satisfy yourself with some modest inquiry — you will know more on that subject at the end of a month's honest work than is written down for you in any book now in the world. So far as that topic goes, you become an authority upon it yourself. And thus you have the satisfaction of feeling that you are not merely dependent upon others, but that in this place you can do your part, however small that part may be, in the work of the great concern.

I have spoken of drawing as an accomplishment in which every student should at least make some experiments. A master in the last generation, the late John Gadsby Chapman, used to say that every one who can learn to write can learn to draw. This is true. In general, also, though not in some details, you are yourself the best teacher you will ever have. Of course you will get the best lessons you can, and the best suggestions from people who know more about it than you do. But, on the whole, the steady work which you do day by day, if you will keep it so that you can criticise it after months have gone by, will teach you more than any single teacher can do. Now every reader would think it a curious thing if in this essay on the Method of Learning I had said it was necessary for the student to learn to read or to write. I really wish that those who follow me



How to Study

283

would regard the learning to draw as a matter not to be neglected more than either of the other studies. Fortunately, in our time the helps for such study are more and more abundant, and no one reads these lines who cannot procure all which are necessary.

CHAPTER VIII

HOW TO KNOW GOD

IT has been taken for granted in these papers thus far that a man can do much as he really chooses to do in the matters which have been considered. Thus it has been taken for granted that he can give up the use of tea or coffee or tobacco or spirits, if he chooses. Or it has been taken for granted that he can rise from bed when he chooses, or go to bed when he chooses. It has even been suggested that he can attain such control of his occupations and desires and habits that he can sleep when he chooses, though sleep is proverbially coy and wayward, and, as is supposed, dislikes to come and go at man's will.

What right have we to assume that man has this power, almost absolute, over the machinery of his life?

Our right comes from this, that man is a living and infinite soul, although he lives in a finite body. He is the child of God, and may partake of God's nature when he chooses. He has, therefore, always the resource of infinite power, if he knows God well enough and confidently enough to call for infinite power to the help of that power which he calls his own. He is permitted and encouraged

How to Know God 285

to ask for this infinite help in all cases where he is to will and do anything pleasing to God.

It is no part of the business of these papers — if it be part of any man's business — to demonstrate the being of God or to try to do so. It is presumed in the outset that those persons who come to these papers for advice believe that God is, that they are his children, and that they may partake of his nature. But no instructions as to the methods of life can go far, without some consideration of the ways by which we draw near to him, by which we come to know him, even imperfectly, to learn what his methods are, and his purposes, so that we may wish to will and do what he would have, and may carry out that wish.

Every child of God, indeed, is left in somewhat the position in which we may readily imagine the son of a great statesman to be when that statesman is engaged in critical duty. Such a young man may, if he chooses, take advantage even of his father's engrossed attention to public affairs, to go off on his own amusements, with his own companions, for his own purposes and theirs. Shakespeare has so represented Henry V., before he was king, as indifferent to his father's policy, and even as separate from him in daily life. But such a young man might be constantly in the work-room of his father. He might talk with him even familiarly of the secrets of the empire. He might execute his commissions for him, could copy a document, or draft a letter. If he did, if he chose,

he could thus enlarge, by every day's experience, his own power of life and of duty, if he really had his father's blood in his veins. There is many an instance in history where a son, in such intimacy with his father, has been able thus to enter into his father's life, and to carry from that life new strength for the purposes which his father intrusted to him.

No analogies serve us perfectly when we come to speak of God, with whom there is no one to be compared. But God is our Father and we are his children. We can learn something of him, though we cannot learn the whole. We can gain some sense of his purpose. All that we know of law is that it represents his wish to-day. And we shall gain strength for the duty of living and the pleasures of living in proportion as we know him, his methods, and his purposes.

How shall we do this? How shall we know him?

I. What the people say who have lived with most success is that we can find God, "if we seek for him with all our hearts." These are the words of Moses, the greatest man who has yet lived, and those words have been repeated by the leaders of life. It is quite fair to take again the analogy of a crown prince, who is the son of a great king. The young man has two courses before him. His father has given him a separate establishment. He can live in his own home, with his own companions, for his own purposes, by his own laws. If these laws interfere too critically with his father's laws, there



How to Know God 287

me a break. He will find out that his father's are stronger than his. But many a crown has lived on in this way, quite indifferent to father's purposes, and has fancied that his did not seem to take much notice of his or, at all events, would not call him to ac-

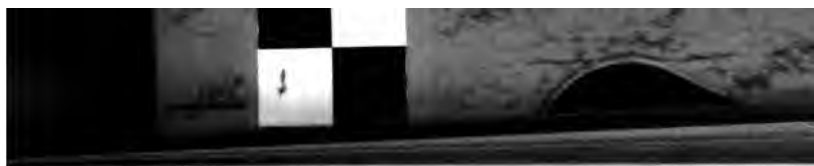
Of which the result is that he does not stand his father's plans, is not in any sort in sympathy with him, does not know him, indeed, as ought to know him. If he is sent off on a campaign he cannot enter into his purpose, and is, in any way, an inefficient officer in his service. But, as has been said, the Crown Prince may make himself acquainted with that service. He may find his father every day — for he will never be put out of the council chamber, of court, or of closet. He may, if he chooses, interest himself in his father's undertakings, he may even understand the relations of policy to another, and see how the fulfilment of one plan makes another easier.

This is what a great commander like the prophet Isaiah would do, if we would find the greatest commander of all. If we want to find him we must seek for him.

In the first place, we must listen and see what he has to say. Form the habit of going off by yourself at a fixed hour every day "to see what God has to say to you." Listen and find if there is not an answer, and what that answer is. I have known a man who told me he had such a place of conference or rendezvous in the attic of his store.

He went upstairs — none of the clerks or boys asked themselves why, or to which story he went. Of course there were a hundred reasons why the master of the store might have to go upstairs. He went up and up every morning. No one need see, no one need ask why, or did ask. He came to his "oratory." In the New Testament it is called a "closet." There he could sit on a box he had for the purpose; he could let the downstairs cares drop off; he could and did forget the prices of sugar and flour and candles and the rest; he forgot the mail and the unanswered letters so far that he could ask what God wanted him to do and to be that day. He did ask, and he waited five minutes before he went downstairs, to see what answer came. Sometimes he had his answer. Sometimes he thought he did not. But I have suspected that he always had it, though he did not always have it in his own way. I think he went downstairs better able to work with God that day than if he had not gone up, and better able to carry out the large laws of life; and this, whether he were conscious or were not conscious of God's reply to his questions.

These papers are for advice. I should advise any man who had such a closet, to keep in it a Bible and any other book which he liked, which seemed to him strong and positive, not necessarily to read every day, but to open, if he wanted to, and to take a tonic or a stimulus from it. It is a good thing, sometimes, to get a good flavor on one's tongue.



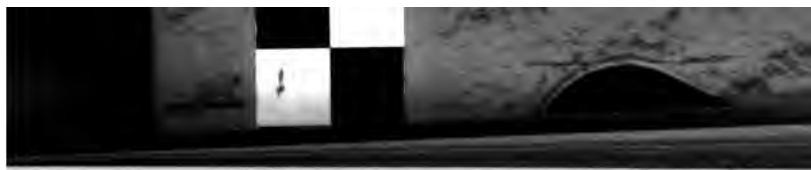
How to Know God 289

II. In the analogy with which we started, the Crown Prince really tries to acquaint himself with his father's methods and ways of work. The man who tries to acquaint himself with God's methods and ways of work finds himself engaged in what Jeremy Taylor calls the "practice of the presence of God." Bishop Taylor puts it in his plan of daily life as the third of the methods or instruments by which a man will secure full strength for daily duty. Taylor counts the "care of time" as the first method, and "purity of intention" as the second. In these papers we have taken "purity of intention" for granted, and, having considered the "care of time," we come directly to this "practice of the presence of God" as a daily habit for any man who wants more strength than the separate human body could claim or expect if there were not a "Power which makes for righteousness" which can be secured in alliance to the separate human body. God is at work in this universe which is outside of me. I will find out how he works. I will find out what he wants. I can then row my boat in the direction in which his river flows, and I need not be pulling against the current, or across it, as a man might do who did not know how or where it was flowing.

All that we say of the Laws of Nature is our effort to divide and set in order, for our convenience, what we know of God's present wish for this world and this universe, so far as we can make out their various processes. We talk of the law of gravita-



tion, of the laws of heat, of electricity, of cohesion, of attraction and repulsion. We are a good deal pleased when we find how closely they are related to each other. We then say that the different forces are co-related, and it pleases us to find that out. All this time we know that at bottom these several laws are so many statements which we have been able to make in words and figures of the way in which God works, who is always in this world which he maintains. Now the man who "practises the presence of God" does not permit any language to keep him from feeling God's present interest in these present affairs. It is God who works them out, and the Crown Prince, really desiring to enter his father's service, always regards them as God's affair. "In the face of the sun you may see God's beauty; in the fire you may feel his heat warming; in the water, his gentleness to refresh you; he it is that comforts your spirits when you have taken cordials; it is the dew of heaven that makes your field give you bread; and the breasts of God are the bottles that minister drink to your necessities." This is the quaint, old-fashioned language of Taylor, so often cited as to become almost proverbial, perhaps. That man is wise and grows stronger who can form the habit of tracing, in such fashion, God's present purpose in whatever he enjoys. Stephenson, the inventor of the locomotive, stood with an English nobleman on a terrace, and they watched together the movement of a train through the valley below them.



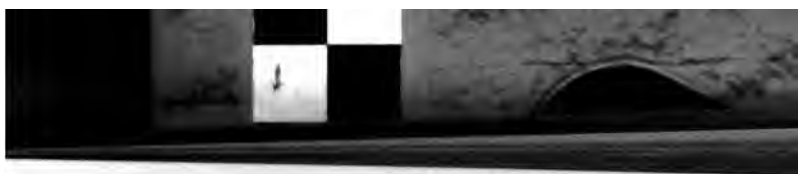
How to Know God 291

"What do you think moves that train?" said Stephenson. "One of your engines, I suppose," said the other, a little surprised. "Yes, indeed! But what moves the engine? The engine is moved by the expansion of steam. The steam expands because the water is heated. The water is heated because the coal is burned. The coal burns because it is but a mass of ferns and other leaves and stems packed away, ready for burning, some hundreds of thousands of years ago. And these ferns and leaves and stems grew because the sun then shone over England as the sun does not shine over England to-day, and by its heat and light forced stem and leaf to pack up the carbon from that heavy carbonic acid of those days; all, that when you and I and the rest here want it, the train yonder might pass from one side of England to another." This is the substance of Stephenson's answer. I do not believe that either of those men ran back in that way over the ages upon ages which have thus conspired together for the health and wealth and comfort of our age, without more grateful thought of that Being, whose name is I Am, who is the same in all time, and so arranges his heat, his light, his carbonic acid, his water, and his steam, that his children may prosper to-day and be comfortable and happy.

What we call the study of natural science is, really, the practice of the presence of God, if we go in the least beneath the phenomenon—the thing which appears—and feel for the wisdom,

the tenderness, the love, or the purpose or law which lies beneath the external appearance. And any man or woman who will mix in with every day's life some interest in nature, may be gaining in that interest a more close sense of the love of God and of his present power. The study of the plants in your window in winter, of the growth of seeds in your flower border in summer, of the crops you have to handle, of the weather, of the shells on the shore, or the lichens on the walls or the trees, may be made a study which brings you nearer to the Great Power who IS in all the universe, so that you shall rely upon him more, and in the end, gain more of his help as you work in your place in carrying out his large concerns.

III. For you have a right to remember, and you gradually come to know, that you can partake of the divine nature of this Power which makes for righteousness. This is the direct statement of the Christian religion. And the shortest and easiest way for any man to test that statement is to try the experiment. Let him hold daily conversation with God, let him every day study God's methods of work, let him look forward as if he were immortal, as an angel of light would do, let him keep the body under, as such an angel would do; let him keep up such a course of life for ten years or twenty, — and then let him tell us, or let him tell the world he lives in, whether he does not know what is meant by being "a partaker of the divine nature." Man is the child of God, the child of this Power



How to Know God 293

which makes for righteousness who is in all nature. Man is not simply the creature of this Power, as an oak tree is, or as a crystal is. Man is his child. Man can know something of his wishes; can know something of his purposes; can go about his business. If man is wise, he tries to do so. And in that very trial he learns more of those wishes and purposes and of that business, and partakes, as the Bible says, more intimately of that nature.

The practical habit or rule to be followed in this has been suggested here in what has been said of the choice of one's occupation. I must so choose my occupation that it shall be in the line of God's present work, and that I may feel, all along, that I am a fellow-workman with him — just as the crown prince is when his father sends him out on a special duty in his service. I do not feel this when I am retailing liquor behind a counter. Therefore I do not choose that calling. I do not feel this when I am maintaining a rascal's cause before the court. Therefore I decline to be his counsel when he comes to me. I do feel this when I am putting seeds into the ground, and using sunshine and rain for a harvest. Therefore I am glad to be a farmer. I do feel this when I am running a line across the prairie, which for a thousand years, perhaps, is to be the boundary between farm and farm, and determine for honest men their rights, so that there may be no doubt, conflict, or confusion. Therefore I am glad to be a surveyor.



I am glad to work where it is clear to me all the time that I am at work with God, with "the Power that makes for righteousness." I am sorry to work in work where I am trying to make people unrighteous, to disobey law, or fight against him. I will not do that. Between these extremes there are various callings, where it is easier or harder to see whether we do or do not carry out his purposes. The hack artist who makes a vulgar valentine, which only gives pain if it ever meets the purpose for which it is printed and sold, must feel that her work is very little connected with the work of God. Yet, in the same work-shop, at her side, there may be sitting another, who, as she mixes her colors, or draws the outlines of her flowers, is thinking of the pleasure which her pretty picture is to give to some group of happy children, and is glad that the good God has made her his instrument for adding to their cheerfulness. There have been, thus, two women grinding their corn side by side with stones just like each other. You take a bar of stone about ten inches long, bulging a little in the middle, and you rub the corn grains on a flat stone, a little hollowed out below. You can see this done in the plaza of San Antonio, just as you could see it done in the valley of Jezreel. No machinery, no science, no water-power, wind-power, or steam-power, lightens the labor. It is all labor, which in itself degrades, unless the spirit makes it into work, which is the control of mere physical forces by an idea. These two women



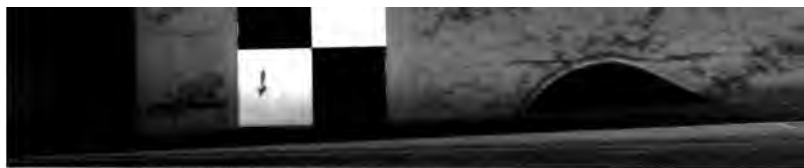
How to Know God 295

were sitting side by side, and rubbing down their corn into meal. The circumstances of the two were identically the same. But one of them as she ground kept complaining of the hardship of her toil, that she was a mere bond-slave, and watched every little lump of the flour as it gathered so slowly, till she could see that there would be just enough for her to make her miserable lonely dish of *polenta*. And the other woman, with every movement of the stone, was thinking how she was working with God, that he was just so good that he permitted her to be the last agent in his infinite work. He permitted her to put her private seal on the finished success. It is indeed the last of a series of infinite miracles. For miracle is the subjugation of matter by the spirit. God has bent the course of the world in its orbit, he has directed the flames and storms of the surface of the sun, he has moved the great waves of air above the earth, he has led the clouds hither and thither, he has ordered day and night, summer and winter, has whispered to a thousand hidden germs and commanded them to swell and grow and tassel out, and in due time to ripen to harvest. Nay, he has whispered to thousands of men and women, brothers and sisters of her who is grinding here, that they might do their share, in preparing field and tools, in training and yoking oxen, in plowing and in reaping. Of all which the sequel is that she has this pint of corn which she is rubbing between the stones. And now he is willing

to give this to her, and permits her to put the last touch to this infinite series of agencies, that her children may be fed to-day. She can say to her little ones when she calls them to the table, "This is your good Father's gift to you, *and your mother's.*" I do not wonder that that woman works cheerfully, or that she works well. I do not wonder that, as the Bible says, she is taken — taken into the very joy of her Lord — while the other is left, in her own sulky selfishness.

The true child of God, who partakes of the divine nature, is really a partner in the work or of universe. True, in proportion to the other partners he does not put in a great deal of work or of capital. But he does put in something. And the man who wants to gain the help of the other partners, especially of the First Partner, who has been willing to make his children fellow-workers in the great concern, likes to think of himself as engaged in no trivial or special business, but in the larger work which is helping all mankind.

It is, then, a good thing for a weaver in a mill, who is in monotonous duty, rather discouraging in some of its details, to think of himself, not as an "operative" at a dollar and a quarter a day, but as an essential factor in God's work for the world. It is a good thing for a boy on a prairie in Dakota to remember, as he oils the running gear of the reaper, that he is the person whom the God of heaven has chosen so that the prayer for daily bread of some sailor in Alaska or some old woman



How to Know God 297

in the Scotch Highlands may be answered. It is a good thing for any of us who want to know God to accept this great offer of partnership which he has made to us, and to work, not as separate speculators, on our own capital in our own way, but as fellow-workmen together with him.

The more we know him, the more infinite strength shall we have for life, whether for finite or temporal duty, or for infinite and eternal duty.

We gain this knowledge, first, by purity of intention; next, by seeking him with all our hearts; next, by studying his method of work; and again, by working with him.

CHAPTER IX

HOW TO BEAR YOUR BROTHER'S BURDENS

[We cannot ask for a better phrase than that of the Epistle to the Ephesians in which Paul bids every man bear his brother's burden. It is, however, rather a pity that neither the Received Version of the Testament nor the Revised Version recognizes the distinction, obvious enough, between the two Greek words used by Paul, — which they translate "burden," as if they were the same. Paul says, "Let every man bear his own *φορτίον*;" and then he says, "Let every man bear his brother's *βάρος*."

The difference would be well enough expressed in English if we said, "Let every man have his own carpet-bag and carry it," and at the same time, "Let every man relieve his neighbor of any burden." This, as I have tried to show, was what Paul meant. Let every man be ready to help in lifting the world's load. *Φορτίον* is something which is carried. Even the freight of a ship is *φορτίον*, whence, indeed, our word "freight." The word conveys the idea of movement. *Βάρος*, the other word, is dead weight. The attraction of gravity, had the Greeks known enough to talk about it, would be *βάρος*. You might speak of the *βάρος* of a pyramid, but not of its *φορτίον*.

By a natural figure *βάρος* means a calamity, a heavy misfortune. *φορτίον* would not be used for this.]

WE have thus far considered in these papers what are called personal duties. By this phrase, which is an unfortunate one, is meant the treatment or education which the man gives to himself, — to his own body, mind, or soul. Such duties are, in fact, possible to a certain extent in a desert island.

But all this is by way of preparation only. We train the body or we train the mind, simply that,



Bear your Brother's Burdens 299

when the time comes, we may use them with most profit. In what have been called "spiritual exercises" the man trains his soul, that he may have more life; he does so that he may live to more purpose.

Now, whatever may be said or believed in other systems, in the Christian system this enlargement of the life and power of body, mind, and soul is sought and gained that the man may be of use to mankind.

As Paul puts it, there is one body, of which each of us is a member, and no one member can improve himself unless he have in mind the improvement of the whole.

Fichte says the same, in a remark which is the central expression of all modern social life: "The human race is the individual, of which each man and woman is a separate organ."

This means that man is a gregarious animal. And just as a bee would die who should separate himself from the swarm and set up housekeeping for himself, the man really dies who separates himself from the great company of mankind.

TOGETHER is the central word.

And when the Saviour and his apostles give such prominence as they do give to "LOVE" in the Christian statements, it is because "together" expresses the central idea, and no man can develop himself or fulfil the duties for which he is placed in the world, excepting as a member of the partnership.

This is what Paul means when he says that every man is to bear his brother's burdens.

And, on the other hand, it is at this point that those romances break down, or the rules of those religious communities, which imagine lonely Christians. Robinson Crusoe is really an impossibility. That is, the conception of a man steadily improving in his spiritual life, and growing better and stronger because he is wholly alone, and parted from other men for twenty years, is a false conception. So of religious orders which bind themselves to silence. You do not let the man in the next room speak to you, lest he should interrupt your thought of God. But the precise thing for which God put you and him into the world is that you and he shall speak to each other. You are not to improve your life alone, and he, his alone. You are to bear each other's burdens. You are to live in a common life.

One cell in an oak leaf may as well expect to live successfully without organic union with the other cells, as one man in society to live so, without organic union with other men.

I. It is best, however, to begin with acknowledging that philanthropy, or what is now called "altruism," because every generation likes its own word, often makes itself very ridiculous. In a comedy now forgotten, the hero, Paul Pry, whose name is perhaps still remembered, after interfering absurdly in other people's affairs, winds up the inevitable wretched failure of his operations, by say-



Bear your Brother's Burdens 301

ing, "I never will do another good-natured thing as long as I live." Mr. Thoreau, by way of satirizing the Christian ministry, says that if he saw any one coming in at the door of his cabin to do him good, he would jump out at the window. Indeed, whenever you see people who make a trade of philanthropy, and there are such people in the world, you understand Mr. Thoreau's feeling and sympathize with him. I was among the people who formed the first Emigrant Aid Company to assist in settling Kansas, in 1854, when "squatter sovereignty" was to determine whether it should be a free State or a slave State. There was something at once exasperating and annoying in the storm of applications which we received from sedentary tramps, as I call them, who wanted, not indeed to go to Kansas, but to be clerks in the office at home which was to send out the emigrants. In various other public enterprises with which I have been concerned, the same nuisance has regularly appeared at the outset.

There is a certain class of men, best denominated as "shiftless," who having had no success in taking care of themselves, or of their own families, offer themselves to be servants of the public, and especially for that service which is the most delicate and difficult of all, the care of the poor. Such people and the failures which follow, almost of necessity when they are intrusted with that care, have done much to make philanthropy ridiculous.

There is also a temptation, subtle and dangerous, pressing on the really benevolent man or woman who is not shiftless; who, on the other hand, succeeds in some bit of public-spirited work. Such a man hates to see anything fail. Perhaps he does see that some matter of public interest is going to the dogs for want of sensible oversight. Precisely because he has succeeded once, he thinks he shall succeed again; and so he is tempted to undertake the second, and then the third, and then the fourth public enterprise which offer themselves for volunteers, perhaps even to the detriment of the first, where he began. The fault here is not wholly his own. It is largely the fault of people who ought to have stepped into those places, but who have stood back for him and others like him to overload themselves.

People who have read Dickens will remember Mrs. Jellyby and her preposterous missions at Borrioboola Gha. There is hardly any exaggeration in this sketch. There are just such people in the world, and they are not all, by any means, self-seeking people. They are adventurous people. They dislike the hum-drum of every-day life, and they like such excitement as corresponding with the Secretary of State and receiving letters from Africa and entertaining native chiefs at tea. So they have fallen into the line of philanthropy which furnishes these excitements, just as other people, in the same necessity, fall into novel-reading or card-playing or travelling or visiting.



Bear your Brother's Burdens 303

All such people unfortunately make benevolence ridiculous and give it a bad name.

In making our plans we must try to avoid their mistake. This we shall do by finding out, if we can, each one of us, what is the "duty next his hand."

II. Something has already been said on the principles here involved, in an earlier paper of this series, on the selection of one's calling. Those principles apply as well when a man is looking to see where he can best be of use to others in the world. First and absolutely he is not to try to do everything. He is to do that which he can do best, if no one else is doing it, and, as between two enterprises of equal necessity, he may choose that which is more agreeable to him. But he is not to take into consideration his likes and his dislikes, unless the necessity is equal in the two cases before him. Generally speaking, however, a necessity at his side is more pressing than a necessity at a distance. That is the meaning of the proverb, which is true more often than most proverbs, that "Charity begins at home."

III. To begin with, then, let it never be forgotten that the family in which it has pleased God to place you is the place of activity for which he trained you. It is that for which you are most fit, and where you work in every way at the best advantage. Many a girl has thought it her duty to go and teach music badly in a ladies' seminary, seven hundred miles away, so that she may send home fifty dollars a year for the education of one

of her brothers. She would have served mankind much better had she stayed at home and helped her mother train the other children in the decencies of life and its larger duties, while she had left the brother to earn his own schooling. And, in general, in all this "looking for a mission," of which one hears a good deal, the foundation question is, "What is needed at home, and what can I do where I am?" A man of much experience once said to me that he had to consider, not simply whether he were to accept a new part, but whether his old part were done with him. Now, one is never done with his part in the family. Even if he travel far, there is always an electric cord connecting him with pleasures or with duties there. Here is the reason why, when married life begins, woman and man both find that there is an end to that old anxious question, "Where is the duty next my hand?" That duty is now at home. And when the first child is born, and still more, when the second and third come, all the old tangles about conflicting duties come of themselves to an end. Room enough for unselfishness now. Field now for the steady growth of love! For God himself has shown where it is, and where your work for your kind is to centre.

IV. It is to centre there, but it is not to be confined there. Charity, or love, begins at home, but it does not end at home. The great text, "One is your Father, and ye are all brethren," means what it says. And the simple fact that the an-



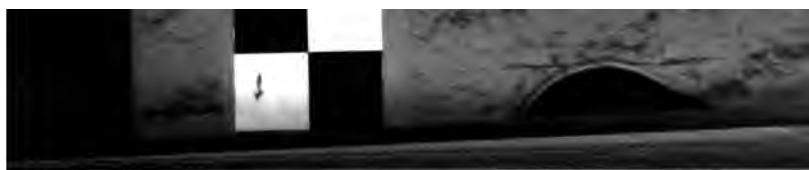
Bear your Brother's Burdens 305

alogies of home life are taken, even to give us the forms of language by which we shall speak of the larger life and its pleasures and duties, is enough to show us what those pleasures and duties are, and in what spirit they are to be carried through. Indeed, if one asks what the Christian "way of life" was, or what it did, when it had no name but "THE WAY" when it started to conquer, his answer will be found in the success in which it follows out these analogies. Paul, at Rome, so deals with the soldier who holds him prisoner that the soldier comes to conceive of this larger life of Paul's, enters into it himself, and is ready, on his part, to call others into the same brotherhood. Our first question recurs then, where and how shall a man's brotherly affection pass beyond his own household into the world of those brothers who are "of the same blood with him?" How is he to bear their burdens, and at the same time be loyal in his own work for himself and for his family? How shall he avoid that Mrs. Jellyby folly of sending a pin-cushion to Timbuctoo, and a book on the Logos of St. John to the Port Royal negroes? Clearly there is a limit somewhere. How is that limit to be found?

Here is where, I think, such satires as this of Dickens's have been of use to us all. It is a great deal better to do one thing well than to half do two, and it is a very great deal better to do one thing well than to do a fiftieth part of each of fifty. Let a man remember, then, that what he does, in

public spirit, is to be done from principle and not from impulse. He does it because he ought, and not because a pathetic appeal has been made to him, and he finds the tears starting from his eyes. Let him make up his mind in advance how much money, how much time, how much thought, how much care he ought to give to bearing his brother's burdens. Let him determine how he can concentrate this work, so as to save wear and tear, save steps, save time, and save money. That is a charming social condition in which people live so simply that one is interested of course in his neighbor's affairs, and can kindly help them without affectation. Thus, when I live in the country, I can lend my books and newspapers to the neighbor's boys, or the neighbor's girls may come in and practise on my piano. I can watch with my neighbor if he is sick, and so in a thousand offices we can help each other. Indeed, what we call in towns by the grand name of the "Organization of Charity" is simply an effort to bring about, under the agency of what we call the "friendly visitor," the same cordial, helpful, mutual intimacy which exists without management in the ease of simple society.

Precisely as an intelligent director says to a pupil, "Read what seriously interests you," — a wise adviser would say, "Choose what interests you," to a person seeking the place where God needs his work. "Something interests you. If you have a passion for dogs and cats and horses,



Bear your Brother's Burdens 307

find some way to be of use to dogs and cats and horses. Are you fond of children? Go to the children's ward of the hospital and see what they want. Are you vitally and really interested in politics? See that we have a decent city government and that the public is brought to a proper understanding of its duties." I remember a lady, one of the saints, indeed, who, as she sat at her window, saw a poor laborer fall from the top of a high building to the foundation. She saw the crowd which rallied round his dead body! It is no wonder that from that moment she cared personally for his widow and his children, and left the friendly charge of them as a legacy to her children. Such trace of what one is tempted to call "the feudal system," in our dealings with those whom we can help, makes the work easier and more cheerful.

V. But it will not do to rely here simply on the "gospel of the attractions." We shall do best what we are fit for. But there are many other things. "Do the thing you are afraid to do," is one of Mr. Carlyle's rules, borrowed, I suppose, from Goethe.¹ Once done, you will find that you do not fear it so much again. Man or woman who thus selects lines of life finds out, indeed, sooner or later, that he has done a thousand things more than he purposed. He planted, and God gave the increase. He lighted a lantern because he hoped that so his son's skiff would clear the rocks; but the same

¹ Or is it Emerson? No one will tell me. — E. E. H.

beacon answered as a warning for the great East Indiaman, and the hard-tossed frigate. The little experiment, in the way of benevolence, if it succeed, will be an encouragement right and left, and as the Saviour's parable says, from that seed, others shall gather a hundred-fold.

The truth is that, in this business of bearing one another's burdens, the personal element must come in somewhere. That personal charm or power by which one man controls and blesses another man is the evidence that we are living in a common life. In other words, we are all children of one God. The moment a true man really opens his heart to me, I accept what he shows me of himself as almost a revelation of my own nature, and my own possibilities. He does reveal to me something of God's nature which he inherits, and that nature I can share with him. It does not do, then, for me to leave all my work of charity or public spirit to this or that well-knit organization, however wise may be its plans. The world wants not mine, but me, and besides directing soldiers how to fight, I must throw myself somewhere into the battle. An old minister, still well remembered, who had many young students, used to say to them, "I will never ask you to do anything which I would not do myself; but I had better tell you, by way of warning as we begin, that I have had to black John Jones's boots, and to put up the widow Flaherty's stove." Personal presence moves the world, and only personal con-



Bear your Brother's Burdens 309

tact carries with it the promised gift of the majestic triumph of the Holy Spirit.

VI. It seems necessary to say all this, even in some detail, in our time, which relies so largely in its arts on the "division of labor." Because I employ one man to make the head of a pin, and another to polish it, it does not follow that I can appoint yet another to "do my charities" while I sit at home by the fire and read Thackeray. I have my own personal part, and that part I must bear.

VII. There remain the duties to the public in which one engages as a member of an association, and those which the largest association of all, the State, carries forward. A very happy tendency of our century unites us in special societies for the removal of wrong, which borrow their impulse from the great central society which we call the "Church of Christ." The State, once existing only to repel the invasion of enemies, gradually assumes in our times, as the kingdom of God comes in, the duties of benevolence, and proves to be best equipped for many of them, for it can be, indeed, imperious in its demands for the means required. So wide are the charities of the State now, and, on the whole, so well administered, that we find men who will join in no others. "I pay my taxes," such men say, "and you must expect no more of me." But we do expect more.

We expect that the same skill and diligence which build up a man's inventions or business, which he shows in the books he writes, the

speeches he makes, in the cure of his patients, or in the care of his farm, shall be shown somewhere and somehow in the care of deaf or dumb or blind or hungry or naked, of the prisoner, or of the stranger. We remind him that all these are gifts intrusted to him as a trustee, which no assessor can value, and on which the State collects no tax, but which, all the same, he holds in trust for the common good. Where he will use them, he may decide. That he must use them, God has decided.

The same rule applies here as in the personal kindness which one renders to his neighbors in need. Better do one duty thoroughly than risk failing in twenty. "Go not from house to house," the Saviour said. The warning goes far enough to check me, when I run from a meeting of the "Prevention of Cruelty to Children" to a meeting "for the conversion of Africans," and thence to the "Society for Promoting Theological Education," which I am obliged to leave before the meeting ends, that I may be in time at the "Prisoners' Aid." What we try to do, let that be well done. But, in this danger, there is no excuse for failing to work somewhere.

VIII. The point most in danger of being forgotten in our American life is the personal presence, personal help, and personal sympathy of the private woman and the private man in the institutions founded by the State. The danger is that these shall be left to a dead routine. "I was in prison, and ye visited me," said the Saviour. It



Bear your Brother's Burdens 311

would have been a poor reply, as he used those gracious words in that central parable, had one of the hearers explained to him that the regulations of the prison commissioners are severe, that only on certain hours are the visitors admitted, and that it was very inconvenient to obey him. The genius of the Christian life is sympathy and mutual help, and the school which is left to be carried on by the public machinery, without the presence, on occasions, of fathers and mothers will be a bad school. The Sunday-school which seeks to run by machinery will not fulfil its office. The almshouse which is not lighted up by the visits of the flower-mission, the young people of the neighborhood, and this or that friendly surprise occasionally waking up its torpor, will one day develop some wretched misery. It is not good for man to be alone; and it is no more good for an "institution" than a man.

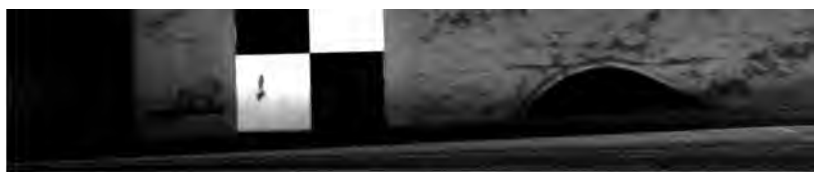
Indeed, the best result which the science of "organized charity" achieves is the recognition on both sides, by the public officers and by the private student, of one principle. The public is to provide liberally the means for the conduct of its great charities. But, for the superintendence, it has a right to rely on the generous unpaid assistance of persons who give their time and their service from their love of the cause in which they are engaged.

CHAPTER X

HOW TO REGULATE EXPENSE

IT may seem to inexperienced readers that we make too sudden a descent in passing from such high themes as have engaged us to the subject of this paper. But persons who have seriously met life and tried its experiments know that we have now a very serious matter in hand. We are none of us living in the simplest form of social order. We are living in a highly organized society. No one of us lives by the food which he obtains by his gun or his arrow, but few by baking the bread made from the corn which they have themselves planted. Some of us are so fortunate that we do subsist, in part, on food which is more sweet because we have shared in its creation. But all of us are largely dependent, most of us are wholly dependent, on an intricate and complicated social system, in which we spend something, probably money, even for the food which we eat; in which we must exchange our own work, or the fruit of our own work, for all that we receive and enjoy.

This is to say that we are all living in a condition of things where the regulation of our expenses comes in very early in the consideration of our duties. We must not turn aside from it, as if it were insignificant, in studying "How to Live."



How to Regulate Expense 313

Mr. Micawber says, and he is right, that if one's income is a shilling, and his expenditure twelve pence half-penny, the result is absolute misery; that if, with the same income, one's expenditure is eleven pence half-penny, the result is absolute happiness.

This is quite true, and because it is true, faithful and intelligent people determine on the regulation of their expenses, under a very distinct and reliable system, among the first foundations which they lay for successful life.

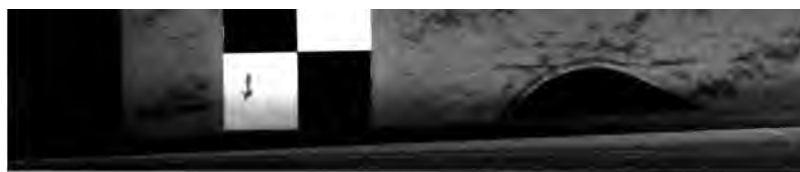
Of course it is not in our power, in making suggestions for this business, to go into the same detail with which we can treat subjects where everybody's circumstances are the same. A man whose wages are paid him weekly regulates his expenses in one way; the man who draws his dividends twice a year regulates his in another. We will attempt little more than to lay down some general principles, and enforce them by some illustrations or parables, which will not be so apt to be forgotten as general principles are, when memory is not so fortified. When Princess Victoria was married, who is now¹ the Empress Frederick, her father, Prince Albert, who was a good administrator in details, wrote her a very wise letter of advice in this business. I think it is to be found in Martin's life of him. He told her that she might be sure, however wisely she thought she had forecast her expenses, that a set of unexpected

¹ 1899.

demands would come in on her, generally very suddenly. He said, "Monsieur l'Imprévu will take care of half your income for you;" by which he means "Mr. Unexpected." Young people can never be made to believe that this will happen so. But as they grow older they know much better who "Monsieur l'Imprévu" is. This is to say, very seriously, they find out as they grow older that they are not alone in the world, and cannot be alone. Every one is a part of a great social order, which he cannot resist without forfeiting manhood and real life. This social order may make very sudden claims upon him, and these are the claims of "Monsieur l'Imprévu." I do not say that Prince Albert's statement for a princess, that she must reserve half her money for such claims, is the statement for all Chautauquan readers. But I put at the beginning of our paper this statement from one of the most skilful managers of our time, that we may be sure from the beginning to make all our plans with a very large margin. We will not think we can foresee everything.

An English clergyman¹ has brought forward a plan which will be wrought out in legislation, I think, before fifty years are over, by which all young people shall be compelled by force of law to provide for their own old age. He proposes that a very heavy poll-tax shall be levied on all persons, say from the ages of sixteen to twenty-six. After this time, he supposes that they may have their

¹ Canon Blackley.



How to Regulate Expense 315

families to care for, and so this poll-tax will then be remitted. The taxes thus gathered are to go to a great fund, kept by the treasury of the State, from which, in turn, every person living after the age of sixty-five will receive a pension till he dies. I think every one will admit that this would be a wise and prudent plan, if it could be carried out, — if legislatures could be made to pass the laws, and treasurers were sure to be honest. Any opposition which is made to the plan will be made to difficulties in detail. But there is no difficulty of detail if a person is his own law-giver, his own subject, and his own treasurer. And every young wage-earner at sixteen years of age, in America, is able to make the provision for old age which is thus contemplated. The sum to be laid aside thus, for the exigencies of possible sickness, or for the decline of life, need not be large. But it should come into the estimate made for the division of expenses when life begins.

There are some old-fashioned methods of social order, descending even from feudal times, in which such provision is now compulsory. Thus, under the law of the United States, when a sailor is paid his wages, a certain very small fraction is always deducted and paid into a fund which is known as "hospital money." The sailor thus buys a right to be treated free in the marine hospitals established for his care by the government of the United States in the neighborhood of every great commercial city. This means that because sailors

are a distinct class, it is proved on the whole possible and desirable that they should insure themselves against the risk of sickness at a small fixed charge, and this is accordingly required by law. Old custom, which has the force of law, does the same thing in many of the German States for domestic servants. When you hire a servant you bind yourself to pay a small fraction of her wages regularly to some institution which will receive her as a patient if she should need care or medical relief. For some of the richer classes of society, indeed, a similar arrangement is made, so that a lady who finds herself without friends, at an advanced period of life, may claim, not as a favor, but as a right, her home in the institution, which, from her childhood, by such payments she has endowed.

With us, such artificial arrangements have not been generally made; but, as has been said regarding the English plan for pensions for old age, it is in the power of each one of us to look forward into the indefinite future, and to provide in time for what is certain, that sickness or other calamity will sooner or later come.

Before we have come to this point, some one will say that we are beginning at the wrong end; that a man must live to-day, and that we had better consider what we are to eat and drink to-day than how we shall buy our food sixty years hence. I do not think so. We live in America, and that is the same as saying we shall not starve. Also and alas! it is the same as saying that we



How to Regulate Expense 317

shall be tempted to run for luck, or not to be provident, unless our best advisers begin with telling us to care for our future.

The proportion of the various expenses of people's lives has been very carefully studied. What is known as Engel's Law was laid down by Dr. Engel, after careful study of the circumstances of life in Germany. The distinct propositions of this law are these four: —

First. That the greater the income, the smaller is the relative percentage of outlay for subsistence.

Second. That the percentage of outlay for clothing is approximately the same, whatever the income.

Third. That the percentage of outlay for lodging or rent, and for fuel or light, is invariably the same, whatever the income. It is, in fact, 12 per cent of the income.

Fourth. That as the income increases in amount the percentage of outlay for sundries becomes greater.

Engel found that a German workman who earned \$225 a year, a man of his intermediate class whose income was between \$450 and \$600, and a person of easy circumstances, all paid alike 12 per cent of their income for their house-rent or lodging. It proves in this country that the average working-man in Illinois pays 17.42 per cent, in Massachusetts 19.74 per cent, while in England it is 13.48 per cent. Our own great master of sta-

tistics, Mr. Carroll Wright, has brought together the results of a large number of returns in America which may be studied to great advantage by persons who want to adjust their expense on system. We must not go into such details here farther than to say that on an average in Massachusetts in 1883, a thousand dollars expense would be cut up thus:

Groceries	\$295.20
Other provisions	197.60
Fuel	43.00
"Dry Goods"	20.00
Boots, shoes, and slippers	36.30
Clothing	103.20
Rent	197.40
Sundries	107.30
	<hr/>
	\$1,000.00

Now it is in this line of sundries, which make nearly 11 per cent of our expenditure, that people are apt to differ most from each other. Engel's man "in easy circumstances" spends 15 per cent for sundries. Of this, $5\frac{1}{2}$ per cent is for education and public worship; 3 per cent is for legal protection; 3 per cent is for care of health; and 3.5 per cent "for comfort, mental and bodily recreation." It would be idle for us, as I have said, to lay down any specific formula. But the use of these figures is that we may learn really to live while we live, and I have copied them at such length that young people may see that in proportion as they have a strong will and "determine" to reduce the proportion which they pay



How to Regulate Expense 319

for subsistence, for clothing, for lodging, and for fire, they have the more power to care for comfort, mental and moral recreation, and for the future. The average American workman pays for these things in the proportion which has been shown above. For fuel and for rent, we can none of us much reduce those proportions. But, as Franklin found and even as Thoreau showed, the others may be decently brought down very far without any injury to health. Without going into detail I will say that I think every young American is wise who, while he is in health, lays apart 10 per cent of his income for a time when he shall not be in health, or shall have outgrown his working faculty. (As to detail in family management, I will take the liberty to refer the curious reader to a paper in a subsequent part of this volume, called "What Shall we Have for Dinner?")

As for the housing, for which these gentlemen allow nearly 20 per cent of our income, I have only this to say, in passing. If I should buy a farm from a great western railway, their people would take me and mine to it in what is called a box freight-car. They would run that car off the track upon my farm, and would let my family live in it till I had built a better house. My charge for "housing" during the months I lived in it would not be nearly 20 per cent of my income. I think very likely these lines will be read by some people who are living in that way, and I will thank any of them who will write to me to tell us what he

thinks the proportional charge for rent or lodging should be in one's scale of expenses.

Briefly, our object is to bring up the percentage for "comfort, mental and moral recreation, and health" as high as we can by fair sacrifice of the other elements of expenditure.

In the very curious report of Mr. Edward Atkinson, made last summer at the meeting of the chiefs of the various Bureaus of Statistics and Labor, he gives estimates for daily rations for men at four rates. One is from 20 to 45 cents a day, one from 15 to 20, and one from 12 to 15, one below 12. There are eight methods given of obtaining the cheapest of these. The very cheapest is 1 lb. of alewives, 2 lbs. potatoes, $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. corn meal, $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. wheat flour, and 1 oz. of butter. This ration costs 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ cents. Each ration given gives 26 parts of proteine, 12 parts of fat, 1.1 parts of carbohydrates.

The cost of a woman's food should be four fifths of this, and at the same modest standard would be. These papers will be read by many in those fertile States which feed the world, who could make even a lower estimate. I have been told that it is a boast in Ohio that no man was ever hungry there, and from my experience of the hospitality of the people I can well believe this. In States where corn and wheat hardly pay for the carriage to market, cracked corn, cracked wheat, meal, flour, milk, pork, and even eggs make up, at a very low price, a bill of fare sufficient to provide



How to Regulate Expense 321

all the ingredients for food which physiological chemistry insists upon.

The days have probably passed by when a pair of prairie hens could be bought for five cents in Michigan. But, even now, the cost of food where food is created is so small that it would astonish the dwellers in large sea-board cities. I suppose that with the growth of the wealth of the country, the days of "pork and beans" as a staple of diet, are over. Liebig proved that the New Englanders, in inventing that dish, had hit on a compound which united in very precise proportion the necessities of human food. But Dr. Palfrey, the historian of New England, implies that this union in a national dish of the "flesh of the commonest animal with the commonest vegetable" indicates a period of great poverty in the colonies.

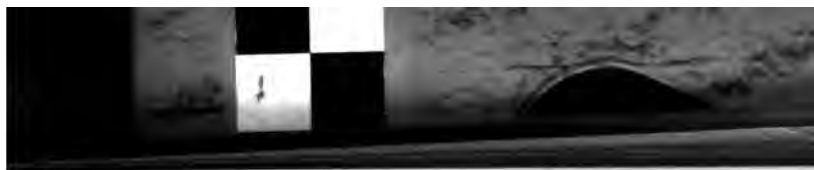
There are many schools in America where, to be sure that the charges of boarding-house keepers are not extravagant, the directors provide a table for pupils who will use it, at one dollar a week. And, alas! many a man or woman will give us histories of school expenditure where they "boarded themselves" at a rate even lower.

I am afraid Ben Franklin is responsible for a good deal of horror here. He describes in his biography his life as a journeyman as being both vegetarian and economical. We take the impression that he lived on bread without butter, and strange to say with a large supply of *raisins*. But this statement was written long after the time he

describes. One is reminded of that celebrated novel "Queechy," where a whole family appears to subsist on water-cresses. Indeed, the account which Thoreau gives of his life by Walden Pond at the money charge of twenty-nine cents a week is a parallel. There are incredulous Concord people who will tell you that the twenty-nine cents only show the money account on Thoreau's cash-book, and that the cold mutton and loaves of bread and cuts of cheese which his mother carried to his hut and left behind her, have not been sufficiently remembered.

I hope the instructions in the chapter on Appetite have been sufficient to guard us against any danger of starvation, even for a good motive. The machine must be fed. There must be fuel enough under the boiler, and fresh acid enough for the batteries. But what has been said in these pages is enough to show that, in America, the real maintenance of life requires but a small fraction of the expense of a regular American wage-earner.

As to the cost of clothes, a "decent regard to the opinions of mankind" is certainly necessary; but courage shows itself, first, in the determination not to be wholly subservient to them. Thoreau's rule is simply "Wear your old clothes." But this is absurd. Many women, most women, try to solve the problem by making most of their own clothing. But, with the introduction of machine-sewing, this rule, so interesting and valuable in the maintenance of home industry, will have to give way. In many



How to Regulate Expense 323

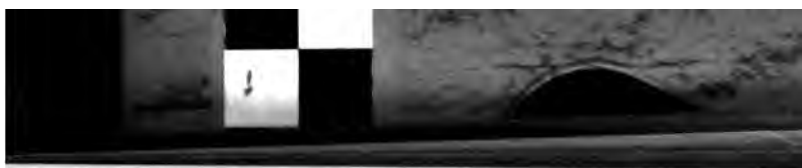
cities now it is simply the duty of many women to "put out their sewing," and to use their time for work in some more difficult grade, where there are fewer competitors. In the figures given in the statistics of Massachusetts the working man of the lowest wages spent 7 per cent of his income on the clothing of his family. The working man of the highest income spent 19 per cent. The average in Massachusetts in 1883 was 15.94 per cent, and in 1875 was 15 per cent. The average in England and Germany was about 18 per cent, and Mr. Lord's averages collected in Illinois were 21 per cent.

It is interesting to observe that, while the average American is much better dressed than he was even half a century ago, the average dress is much cheaper. Thirty men and women will now make as much cotton cloth as one hundred would twenty-five years ago. And the change with regard to other textiles is similar.

On the other hand, fashion exacts more; a decent regard to the opinions of mankind exacts more. Thoreau might live in his old clothes by Walden Lake. But he was no such fool as to wear them when he went a-lecturing.

It is a question of conscience for each person to decide, seriously and with prayer, how large a proportion of his expense should be distinctly and definitely for others. On this, we need make but one or two notes. Strictly speaking, all right expense is for the benefit of others. You feed yourself and you clothe yourself only that you may do

what God wishes you to do for the benefit of your fellow-men. You keep the machine in the best possible working order. Now this does not mean that the machine is to be slovenly. You are to polish the brasses of the locomotive as carefully as you oil the running gear. Yes, and you are to hang flowers upon the locomotive by way of rejoicing upon a holiday. Much of your expense and much of your care are given thus to keeping your machine in order. But not all. Part of it is given consciously and directly for the good of others. Do not be misled here in thinking it must be given to tramps or beggars only. That honest baker in the square, who sells cream cakes and Washington pies, is just as good a fellow and deserves just as much thought at your hands as if he had no trade, and had come to you to beg for bread and cheese for his breakfast. You must decide for yourself. Only be sure that somewhere, of conscious purpose, you lay aside a regular part of your income for the good of some one you are not compelled to serve. The State will compel you to render service in your taxes. And things should be so arranged that the rate of taxation should be the sign of the civilization of the community. The higher the taxation, the higher the civilization. But, beside this, if you are really to live, you must tax yourself by some fixed rule, as has been said. I cannot offer a better suggestion than that which is made so nobly by Starr King: "We say that it is the duty of every man, with any means, to ob-



How to Regulate Expense 325

serve proportion in his surplus expenses; to have a conscientious order with regard to the service which his superfluous dollars discharge. Over against every prominent allowance for a personal luxury, the celestial record-book ought to show some entry in favor of the cause of goodness and suffering humanity; for every guinea that goes into a theatre, a museum, an athenæum, or the treasury of a music-hall, there ought to be some twin guinea pledged for a truth, or flying on some errand of mercy in a city so crowded with misery as this. Then we have a right to our amusements and our grateful pleasures. Otherwise we have no right to them, but are liable every moment to impeachment in the court of righteousness and charity for our treachery to heaven and our race."

CHAPTER XI

HOW TO DRESS

I AM relieved from the most difficult necessities of this paper, because in the current volume of *The Chautauquan* Miss Ward has treated so fully the most important details of the subject, and has given so many directions which will prove their own value. I need not, even by way of illustration, allude to such details again, and I gladly refer my readers to her treatment of them. Our discussion will be more general, and may be confined chiefly to considering the comparative expense of dress, and the amount of thought and care to be given to it; and such considerations will require some view of the importance of fashion as a factor in society, and indeed of dress as a test in the comparisons of civilization.

I. I wish I could make the young people of the present day read Carlyle's "Sartor Resartus," but I have at last given up the effort. Everything that is good in "Sartor Resartus" has been borrowed and borrowed, and used in other literature so abundantly that when young people come to the book itself, which in its day was thought so bright and fresh, they find its doctrine commonplace and its wit strained or exaggerated. The



words "Sartor Resartus," mean a "Tailor Patched." The original idea of Carlyle seems to have been to write an amusing satire upon the shams of modern life, by showing that the various forms of social life are but as so many garments, of which the fashion can be changed at will. He would have been glad to work out in this way, directly or indirectly, the suggestion that what can be changed so easily cannot be essential or fundamental, that the foundation of life is deeper than its costume, and that men are much better employed in studying the foundations than they are in regulating the outside. But Carlyle had not far advanced in the papers, which were published serially, before he had engaged himself so seriously in the grave discussions which were to decide what the fundamentals are and how they are to be found, that he became careless about the amusing details of dress and its accidents, which he had meant to make the framework of the book all through. When he returns to them, the reader is puzzled and annoyed, and wishes it was not there, that he might follow, without interruption, the memoir of Teufelsdröckh, around which the philosophy of the book really forms itself. He finally forgets that he and the author started with the clothes-philosophy.

None the less do I refer to it here, because we need to begin by remembering, as Mr. Carlyle bids, that it is in one mood that we determine on the realities of life, and in quite another that we adjust the details of its forms or of its costume. That is

no accident by which, when we transfer the words which deal with the manufacture of clothing, to use them for analogies with other arts, we always imply blame. A tailor, a shoemaker, a milliner, are people who are subduing the world as loyally as any other workmen. A tailor's work, in itself considered, is as noble, as he conquers matter, as is that by which a farmer conquers matter. The work is as brave and true in the one case as in another. But so great is the danger of the misapplication of such work, in the manufacture of this or that folly of costume, that to say of a bit of writing that it is "a piece of millinery" is dispraise. Such a writer as Shakespeare will allude to "tailors and cobblers" as if they are necessarily unable to enter on serious discussion. All this means, Mr. Carlyle would say, that man will not regard the forms of things as of so much value as the things themselves, and his "clothes-philosophy" is an attempt to make men remember and acknowledge this.

The discussion of dress should come into serious papers on the conduct of life, because we must determine for ourselves how far, in the conduct of life, we will be swayed in the non-essential by the decisions of other people, and how far we will undertake to regulate these decisions, or, at the least, to take a part in them. These papers do not treat the question "how to hoe potatoes" or "how to fire an engine." Yet there is a good way and there is a bad way to fire an engine, and to hoe potatoes.



The good way or the bad way, however, may be learned best by an individual with the coal-shovel or the hoe in his hand, and hardly depends on any principle of his own life, which he should have found by study, observation, determination, and prayer. In regulating dress, on the other hand, we are acting, first, for other people as well as ourselves. My friends see my clothes much more than I do, and my neatness or elegance affects them, at the first blush, much more than either does me. More than this, the general decision of the world on the matter of costume has a great deal to do with the economies of my costume. The lady who should set out to-day to clothe herself in "samite wonderful," because ladies were clothed in it in the days of King Arthur, would have a long career of "shopping" before her. "No, Miss, we have no samite in stock; plenty of gingham and calico, Miss, but no samite." Probably she must dress in what the shops will furnish. It is worth while, at all events, for her to know where her individual determination to wear samite must stop, and how far the quest for it may carry her.

If it be safe to digest from the "Sartor Resartus" twenty lines of truth, for readers who will not read the book because it was written fifty years ago, the following lines may be taken as an experiment in that way: Man cannot go naked; decency forbids, and in the parts of the world best adapted for living, the climate forbids. Man must be

clothed. The daily work of a great number of men and women will be enlisted in the making of clothes for all. In savage life, each person makes his own clothes. In civilized life, work is subdivided, fewer persons are engaged, and the clothing becomes more uniform. So the man is warmed, and can go about his daily affairs easily, and presents an agreeable aspect to those who look on, without stopping himself to make the materials of his clothes, without cutting them out, and without sewing them together. Practically the clothing is almost all which the observer sees of the man. His face and hands are but a small part of his person. But let no man be deceived by this into thinking that the clothes are the man. And, of the larger man, of the human family, which is one body, of which we are the members, let no man be deceived into thinking that its clothes are the body. The body has its own life, and we must not regard the fashion of its dress as more important than the realities of the life.

Whether for society or for the man himself, this lesson of the "clothes-philosophy" is worth remembering.

I determine, then, that my dress shall be a secondary consideration, though an important one. I will not be a slave to it, more than I am to appetite. But I will not offend my neighbors by what is a trifle in the comparison with fundamental realities. I may have to add the determination that, so far as my share goes, I will add to the



How to Dress

331

harmony and elegance of the rooms I am in, as I would have a good picture on the wall, in place of a bad one, if it were in my power. To carry out that illustration, I should be a fool if, when I stopped at an inn for an hour, I spent my time in improving the pictures on the wall of the reception room. It may be that the time I spend on my adornment for an hour is as badly wasted. I must have some principles which will determine what is legitimate, and what is waste.

II. Now, here, what has been said on the regulation of expense is to be considered in the determination of the proportion of expense which shall be given to dress. We have tried to show how far the true man and woman, in regulating the use of his income, may or ought to economize in the purchase of his food. In that determination the elements are more simple than they are in his choice of his dress. His choice of food affects himself and no one else. Strictly speaking, if he eat enough good food to keep him in health, no one else need interfere with his selection. But I must dress so that I shall not offend certain requisitions of the society in which I live. I must not go to an evening party in a dress which shall be offensive to my host or to the greater part of the guests whom I meet there. As we go on we shall see that this condition acts in such ways that it cannot be avoided.

It is to be observed, also, that the expenditure for dress of the people who live in our modern world

is a much smaller part of their expenditure than is that for subsistence. The cost of a man's subsistence ranges, it seems, in America from forty-one per cent of his expenditure, which is the average cost in Illinois, to sixty-three per cent, which is the highest of the averages reported in different years in Massachusetts. In the matter of subsistence, then, a half or two thirds of one's expenditure is determined. But, on the average, the clothing of a man or woman only takes sixteen per cent of his expenditure or hers, in the favorable conditions of Massachusetts, where clothing and the materials for it are cheap, being produced in large factories established for the purpose. Even in Illinois, where the conditions for the cheapest clothing are not so favorable, the average cost of clothing is only twenty-one per cent of the expenditure. It seems desirable to call attention to these limitations, because in practice, where people find retrenchment in expense necessary, they are always tempted to reduce the cost of their clothing, with a kind of superstitious feeling that they are already living on the minimum ration of food which is possible. It will prove, in many instances, that the reform of expenditure should be effected at just the other end. Many a girl makes herself miserable by giving up her new ribbons or a new dress, who could save her money to much more advantage by giving up her candies, her chocolates, her maple sugar, and other such dainties.

Indeed, if I am to give a practical rule, which



How to Dress

333

will save a deal of trouble, and will generally, though not always, work well, I should say that, generally, a person had better accept the ratio which the experience of his neighbors has assigned for this department of expense, and not try, single-handed, to alter it. If you live in Massachusetts, set aside sixteen per cent of expenditure for the dress of your family; if in Illinois, twenty per cent. Accept this as what has come about in the order of manufacture and trade, and do not waste weeks of time and care and discomfort in the effort to save five dollars by fighting against this law. On the other hand, do not go beyond it. Be sure that by your care of your clothing, by your neatness and simplicity, you make the dress you wear answer its purpose, and keep within the rule.

The best adviser whom I have consulted on the economics of dress, after referring me to admirable articles which will be found in the journals of milliners and clothiers, and also to some clever little hand-books easily obtained at the book-shops, says that, in the matter of economy in dress, people are apt to neglect one important consideration. They should make their plans for three or four years, and not for one. A man's overcoat, the garment which a woman wears for the same purpose, furs, arctics, underclothing, are bought, not for twelve months, but for a longer period. And my adviser says (in 1886): "Your pupils will come to grief if they buy clothing simply for this year, as if there were never to be any 1887. That year will certainly come,

and the plan for clothing must be made broad enough to cover it. We cannot wear our old clothes always, as Mr. Thoreau bids us, but, on the other hand, much of our clothing must be bought with reference to long usefulness. Impress upon them all the necessity of constant care of their clothing. The question whether a coat lasts two hundred days or one hundred and fifty is determined simply by the care with which it is kept."

III. Shall I contend against the fashion, or submit to it?

If the fashion tampers with the health, you must stand against it. But this is not apt to happen. It does not happen nearly so often as the careless writers say. Fashion in most instances follows some general law, and is justified by considerations which do not at first present themselves. "Let us not treat fashion too gravely, nor let us magnify its inevitable importance by railing at it. In its essence it is not a disease, to be eradicated; it is rather a passion of the human soul, liable like all passions to constant abuse, which must be regulated, and exercised in due balance with the other forces which go to make our life." These are the words of Mr. William Weeden, who has had the opportunity, which only a great manufacturer of textiles has, to know the dispositions of fashion year by year. He says, again: —

"The devotees of fashion are voluntary pioneers — the few who explore the new possibilities of dress and freely give to the slow and sober many



How to Dress

335

the benefit of their dearly bought experience. For example, remember the impression we all received from the long ulster overcoat when it first appeared on the fops a few years since. It seemed to be a preposterous caricature of a garment. But we soon found our conservative notion was a mistake ingrained by the custom of short coats. Now these garments are common as any, adapted in price to the means of car drivers and laborers, as well as of the dandies who introduced them; and they afford a comfort needed in the fickle fierceness of our climate."

Here is a fair illustration of the value of fashion in the line of preserving health. The same may be said, on the whole, of the compulsion of fashion in making women wear thick shoes and boots. It must be confessed that at the same time fashion ruins their gait and indeed abridges their exercise by lifting the heel absurdly. But, as has been said, the questions of detail are not to be discussed here. So far as women's dress is concerned, the questions regarding health in the dress of women are so well discussed by Miss Woolson and others, in what is the standard treatise on dress reform, that I will not attempt them in detail. People who want to study the subject must obtain Lady Haberton's tracts and papers also.

IV. Mr. Emerson's verdict on American dress is interesting, as coming from an unprejudiced observer, quite willing to tell the whole truth; and whoever is tempted to make repression the only

rule in the management of costume should note what he says of the effect of dress in "levelling up" the person who has been used to mean apparel. Mr. Emerson says: —

"One word or two in regard to dress, in which our civilization instantly shows itself. No nation is dressed with more good sense than ours, and everybody sees certain moral benefit in it. When the young European emigrant, after a summer's labor, puts on for the first time a new coat, he puts on much more. His good and becoming clothes put him on thinking that he must behave like people who are so dressed, and silently and steadily his behavior mends. But quite another class of our own youth I should remind, of dress in general, that some people need it and others need it not. Thus a king or a general does not need a fine coat, and a commanding person may save himself all solicitude on that point. There are always slovens in State street or Wall Street, who are not less considered. If a man have manners and talent, he may dress roughly and carelessly. It is only when mind and character slumber that the dress can be seen. If the intellect were always awake, and every noble sentiment, the man might go in huckaback or mats, and his dress would be admired and imitated. Remember George Herbert's maxim, 'This coat with my discretion will be brave.' If, however, a man has not firm nerves, and has keen sensibility, it is perhaps a wise economy to go to a good shop



How to Dress

337

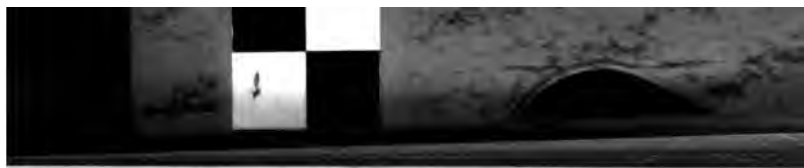
and dress himself irreproachably. He can then dismiss all care from his mind, and may easily find that performance an addition of confidence, a fortification that turns the scale in social encounters, and allows him to go gayly into conversation where else he had been dry and embarrassed. I am not ignorant. I have heard with admiring submission the experience of the lady who declared that 'the sense of being perfectly well dressed gives a feeling of inward tranquillity which religion is powerless to bestow.'"

This is to be remembered as a corrective whenever some preposterous fashion, like that which slaughters fourteen million song-birds in a year for women's hats, makes the prophets speak of the law of "dress" as wicked in itself. To quote Mr. Weeden again: The stimulus given in all classes by the fashion "is the one social stimulus most profound in its source and most far reaching in its effects. Better culture makes the home the centre of social ambition and surrounds it with the fruits of personal sacrifice, including the offerings of dress and personal adornment. But in the early stages of individual growth there is no principle of social emulation so potent in the average man and woman as the desire 'to look like folks.'"

V. All that we have said thus far may be considered equally by men and women. In the philippics of the press and pulpit on the follies of fashion, women generally receive the brunt of the attack in our day. In such absurdities as this of

the song-birds, they certainly deserve it. But it is probable that taking the world in general, the passion for good dress is quite as strong with men as with women. It certainly shows itself more among men than among women in savage tribes, where by virtue of their superior force, men are more apt to have their own way than they are in countries which have attained some share of Christian civilization. Speaking of civilized fashions, Mr. Weeden says: "There is never absent from our present apparel a slight sex relationship, and this expresses itself very curiously. A new color in male garments is now almost always introduced by imitating a feminine fashion. But I have never known the ladies to take a color from our side. On the other hand, forms of garments seem to be more essentially masculine and to be often copied by feminine taste. The billycock hat, peajacket or roundabout, long ulster coat, and buttoned gaiter-boot, the stiff linen collar with cravat, the riding hat, and other ladies' fashions which will suggest themselves, are adopted from the male costume. I remember no instance in our time where men have borrowed a form from their sisters."

Perhaps the whole matter may be abridged in a single remark of his. He says that "the draperies of Phidias have clothed the human form forever, and admit of no change or improvement. But if these be the epics of history and culture, the woman of the time, the perfectly dressed lady, is the lyric of her own period and breathes forth the



How to Dress

339

best expression which that time is capable of. Color softens form, and we can have social color only from instantaneous and changing life. That indescribable something, that grace more beautiful than beauty, will utter itself only in the well-bred lady, and she will be well dressed because she is well-bred."

VI. There is one detail which cannot be passed by in any consideration of the general subject of dress, which did not come into the range of topics which Miss Ward discussed in her article. She had no occasion to refer to the questions regarding "mourning" and its place in the customs of Christian civilization.

It can hardly be denied that a person in great grief for the recent death of a friend will wish to apprise other persons whom he meets that he has suffered such a bereavement, by some sign readily noticed at the first meeting. There are a hundred good reasons why such a signal should be given, and those who give it and those who profit by it have an equal interest in preserving customs which give such a signal. Such signals are given in dresses which bear the signs called "mourning."

When this has been said, however, probably all has been said on which this custom of "mourning" can rest, if it is to be tested by its utility. Probably, also, it cannot be urged that the origin of the custom is to be found in the simple wish to give such visible sign of sorrow. The origin of the custom is to be found in the self-humiliation



which wore sack-cloth and scattered ashes on the head, when one was conscious of sin and wished to acknowledge the wrath of a supreme God, before whom he would not even appear to contend. In such a mortification and confession of failure came in the custom of which the only relic now is to be found in the mourning habiliments worn on occasions of sorrow.

It must, however, be thoughtfully remembered by people who are attempting to guide social life under Christian agencies and principles, that with the Life and Light of the Gospel, no such view of death remains as is intimated in these customs of a savage religion. We do not now regard the death of a friend as a punishment imposed by God on any folly or frailty of ours. Often we regard it as promotion to a higher field of service; always we believe it is ordered in a Providence which understands life much better than we do. We submit to that Providence, and do not measure our wishes against its conclusions. We do not wish, therefore, to wear sack-cloth in token of our wickedness or failure, or as a confession that we have struck our colors in a contest where we have been in the wrong.

Reserving, then, the right to ourselves to indicate by quietness of costume, or by some badge easily understood, that we have suffered loss by the death of a friend, perhaps that we do not want to be asked to go into scenes of special gayety or excitement, we must, in consistency, carry this custom of



How to Dress

341

"mourning" but very little further from mere deference to the habit of the community. If that habit comes, as it certainly does in the case of "mourning," from a lower notion of religion than ours, it is our business to modify it and improve it. This we do best, not by writing essays about it, but by abstaining, when occasion comes, from any change of costume, excepting such as shall give to friends the immediate intimation, to which they are entitled, that we have sustained a bereavement.

Any thoughtful person who leads the social customs or opinions of the town in which he lives will find ample reason for considering this duty very carefully. The expense which is thrown on the poor by the custom of "mourning," at the very moment when the expense of sickness and death is hardest to bear, is a very serious matter in the economics of those to whom economy is a difficult business. The lead given by five of the ladies most highly considered in the town is the lead which will be followed by five thousand of the people who have least money to spend on black crape and other "luxuries of woe." Even if one's personal wish, at the time of bereavement, would be to drift with the current, to let one's friends "do what they choose about dress, if only they will let me alone," still there is a duty to the public of the place in which you live. That duty is to restrict to the very smallest conditions the tokens of "mourning" which you place on your costumes as an indication that you have lost a friend by death.

CHAPTER XII

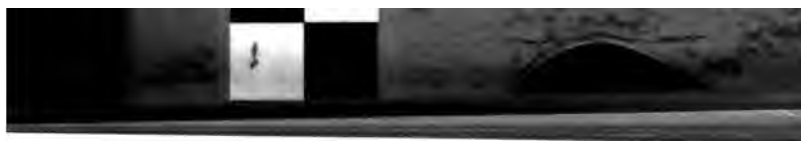
HOW TO DEAL WITH ONE'S CHILDREN

IN Miss Edgeworth's sequel to "Frank," there is a conversation between Frank's father, who had no other name, and the Engineer, who had no name, on the education of children. The conversation did not belong in the story, but Miss Edgeworth forced it in because it contains the essence of her theory and her father's, and she wanted to force it upon people who would not read their longer treatise on that subject. That treatise itself, now generally forgotten, is commended to conscientious and affectionate parents.

In this talk between Frank's father and the Engineer, Frank's father says that he has himself taught Frank to ride on horseback, because he wanted the boy in after life always to associate the pleasure he took in riding with the memory of his father. He confesses that he is jealous of any one else who should come between him and his son in that business.

Frank's father has a right to this gratitude of his son and the pleasure connected with it, because he is his father. And a very important principle of education is involved in the declaration.

Make your children your companions, as far as



How to Deal with one's Children 343

you possibly can. This is the practical statement which is involved in the principle.

There is a certain danger, not much but enough to be considered, that the Juggernaut tyranny of a great public-school system may do something to crush out that natural tenderness which ought to bind children and parents, parents and children, in one. Thus, of necessity, the school hours must be fixed, and they are unchangeable. All home hours have to conform to them. In bad schools there will be evening lessons sent home. Of course these must be learned, and so much time is thus taken from home intimacies, duties, and pleasures. Because this is all so, it is all the more necessary in America that fathers and mothers shall watchfully keep close to their children, and keep the children close to them, by any device in amusement, in study, in daily work. There is no fear but the children will gladly hold on upon their share in this companionship.

Suppose a growing family, of half a dozen children of all ages, from fourteen down. Suppose such a family in a city of the comfortable size, not too large or too small, such a city as the Springfield, or Akron, or Syracuse. Evening comes. Supper is over and there are two hours before the bed-time of the older children. What are these boys and girls to do, and what is their mother to do?

It is perfectly in her power to go Monday evening to a progressive euchre party, on Tuesday

evening to a mothers' meeting, on Wednesday evening to Mrs. Jones' party, on Thursday evening to the regular prayer-meeting, on Friday evening to the theatre, and on Saturday evening she may, with her husband, return the Fillebrowns' call.

On his part, her husband may go out to "the store" every evening but Saturday, with such interruptions as are made necessary by the lodges, the "committee," the prayer-meeting, the caucus, and the visits of his customers from the country.

If, with or without consideration, father and mother do take these courses, whoever leaves the children last will say, "Now be good children, be careful with the lamp, be sure you do not sit up too late, and, Jane, I wish you would give the baby her drops when you go to bed."

The children will then follow the example of their parents as well as they can. Tom and Dick will roam the streets with the other boys who have like liberty, and make such acquaintanceship as Satan or any other power may suggest, in the stables, saloons, and mock-auction rooms. Jane and Olivia will do likewise, as far as they dare and can, — they will perhaps go across and sit on the door-steps with Fanny and Matilda, till the time of their parents' return approaches.

After ten years the general verdict of the neighbors will be surprise that, considering Mr. and Mrs. Jones were such truly excellent people, their children should have "turned out" so wretchedly.

On the other hand, it is quite possible for Mrs.



How to Deal with one's Children 345

Jones to look this matter of companionship with her children fairly in the face, once for all. She may say, "These children are bone of my bone and blood of my blood. Their life is my life. They will, probably, be more like me in tastes, in dispositions, and in faculties, than any other people in the world. I choose them for my life-companions. For better, for worse, for richer, for poorer, in joy or in sorrow, they and I will rough along together."

This resolution will, at first, cost Mrs. Jones some serious self-denials. If she is living in the town where she grew up, it will separate her widely from "the other girls." That separation, however, really came the day she was married, and she promised then, with a good deal of solemnity, that she would meet it and all that it involved.

Because she makes this resolution, to take the case named in our concrete instance, she does not go to the progressive euchre party Monday evening. She stays at home, and the children are with her. They are with her, of course. They always have spent their evenings with her. They hate to go anywhere else, or to be anywhere else. In a household to which my memory runs back, as I write, she places a central lamp on a large table, as soon as supper is done; the children, perfectly by system, draw up their chairs to the table, and she provides for them her stores of entertainment: dominoes, checkers, chess men, backgammon-boards, games of this and that, such as have accu-

mulated for years. Each child has a pencil ready cut, and a sheet of paper to draw upon, as certainly as he would have had bread or milk at supper. In these days it is easy to add a box of water-colors or of colored crayons. For the little children she has all the simpler arrangements of the kindergarten: the clay for modelling, the cut paper for weaving. It is no burden to her, but a pleasure, to oversee the evening's entertainment, varied a hundred fold, which takes care of itself where such provision is made for it; she becomes the right hand of each boy and girl, more than guide, more than philosopher, more than friend. She has her reward. For those children grow into a passionate love for her. They know how young she is, and how perfect is her sympathy with them. And every word she has to speak to them of warning, of advice, of request or command is sure to tell.

She has made herself their companion, and has made them hers.

As we live it is not always so easy for a father to do exactly the same thing in the same way.

But let him remember, as this mother did, that the children are bone of his bone, blood of his blood, that his life is theirs. Let him be on the lookout for chances to have them with him, and to interest them in his affairs.

James Mill, the author of the "History of India" and first editor of the *Westminster Review*, was a man of letters. Literature, or the writing of books, was his business.



How to Deal with one's Children 347

If there is any business which is supposed to separate a father from his children, it is this. How often it is said to a boy, "Don't disturb your father, because he is writing."

But Mill never said so. He sat at one end of the study table, his boy sat at the other. The boy studied his Latin, and if he did not know how to read a sentence, he asked his father, and his father told him. On the other hand, if the father had a list of generals or of ships to copy, I do not doubt he pushed it across the table, and told the boy to copy it. That is the way in which John Stuart Mill was trained; and I have not observed in all the machinery of our generation, high schools, intermediate schools, preparatory, second primary, or third secondary schools, any way which has improved on that specimen of training for literature and literary work.

The great advantage of farm work, as a school for the training of men, is that it admits so many chances for the father and his sons to be together. It is "we" who do it; the boy rides the horse while the father holds the plow, or the little boy drops the potatoes while a bigger boy and the father cover them and make the hills.

The Chautauqua system shows no finer result than when a father comes with his daughter and his son for the diplomas which they have won together, by reading in the same course for four years.

"Where there's a will there's a way." And the

father who will remember that he has a better right to his son, and a nearer, than any school-board or school-master, will be on the lookout for good occasions for companionship.

"George, I am going out with Mr. Tapeandrod to measure the lines where they are going to make the new reservoir. You can come with us."

If the boy belongs to a high-pressure regulation school of the seventh power, he will say, "Father, I am very sorry, but we have to present to-morrow a map of Italy drawn from memory and colored, with all the names we can remember written in."

It is precisely at this point that the intelligent father knows how to have his own way, without appearing to interfere with the discipline of the school. He does not give way, however. He takes the boy with him, and the boy enters into his life. Because the boy is his boy, the boy goes with him about his business. If it is necessary, they both get out of bed an hour earlier than usual the next morning, and the father shows the boy how to stretch the paper for the map, how to mix his tints, how to measure his parallels and meridians. The principle again is companionship, just as far as companionship is possible. He enters into his boy's pursuits, and his boy enters into his.

All this does not mean that the business of education or any business of the house is carried on by what we call in New England "a caucus." The regulation of education and the regulation of all the affairs of the family are to be made by the



How to Deal with one's Children 349

father and the mother. If they are sensible people, they will explain, particularly to the elder children, their reasons for making this or that decision. But they do this that it may be the easier for the children to adapt themselves to the decision, and they must not give the lower house any reason to think that it has a veto on the upper house; or that if the two houses disagree, the arrangement proposed will not go into effect. It is hardly necessary to discuss here the reasons for this statement. It is enough to say that in action no executive office should ever be intrusted to a large board. The executive office must be in the hands of one person. And, in this very case, the husband would not consult with the wife nor the wife with the husband, unless in simple truth, and not in metaphor, the husband and wife were really one.

But if they are to explain the reasons to the children, there must be some reasons to explain. They must not be running for luck. They must, in the essential things, as we have seen in other papers of this series, have certain determinations. It does not follow, even, that these determinations are the same for one child as for another, but we must know what we are about.

Here is Harry, for instance, who evidently has a facility for language, but is slow in mathematics and quite indifferent to outward nature. Most school-masters will want to let that boy run where he runs easily, and to "ease-off" as far as they can on the natural history and on his mathematical

studies. But other teachers, especially those of the variety, too large, who like to make school disagreeable, will want to press him on the lines where he works with difficulty, to develop his dormant activities on those sides, and in a word, to do what they can to restore the balance which nature has left unadjusted.

Now there is a great deal to be said on each side, and you must make your decision for each separate child whom God gives you. But none the less must you make it. When you have made it you must hold to it long enough to give to it a reasonable trial. "Go not from house to house." Spare the boy or girl, in after life, the miserable reflection that he or she was made the victim of every system of education which happened to come up in the period of childhood and youth.

There will be found scattered through Mrs. Butler's¹ reminiscences and other writings, many suggestions as to education, which are worth note. She says somewhere, rather bitterly, that women are in general, of nature, only too well disposed to turn from topic to topic, from one occupation to another, and in general to look superficially on that which they study. She says that in the arrangement of women's schools this tendency has been acknowledged and yielded to, so that a girl is encouraged, or directed, to study a little French, a little Italian, a little Latin, a little grammar, a little arithmetic, a little music, a little drawing, a little

¹ Mrs. Frances Anne Kemble Butler.



How to Deal with one's Children 351

painting, — in short, a little of almost everything which can be named. On the other hand, she says, the average boy who receives the best education is kept sternly at his Latin, Greek, and mathematics, and thus gains, at the very outset, the habit of concentration which in itself gives him strength for whatever he has to do in life. This remark, which was made forty years ago, could not be so broadly made now as it was then. For in the better schools for women there is much more concentration than there was in the old-fashioned "ladies' seminary;" and the more important schools for boys are, on the other hand, yielding on this very point, and give the boys a choice in a much wider range than the three studies which she indicates. But the remark is worth citing, because it probably indicates the side on which danger lies.

We should never forget that we send these children to school, not so much to learn facts as to learn how to learn them. Of course there are some central facts which they must learn: as that three times three is nine, and that a b spells *ab*. But the principal business of education is to start boy and girl with aptitude, desire, and strength to follow, each in the right way, the line of life which he or she may have to follow. It is somewhat risky to give them "eleven weeks of botany," "eleven weeks of entomology," "eleven weeks of geology," "Spanish in six lessons," "Italian in six lessons," "French in six lessons," if we mean

that they shall gain, in young life the persistent power of enduring to the end to which only does victory come.

Fathers and mothers must remember what Mr. Hamerton says vulgar parents are apt to forget. It is this: that a child may be born to you of tastes, faculties, and consequent predispositions entirely unlike your own. So far as these matters depend on descent, it frequently happens that a child inherits qualities from a grandfather or great grandfather which do not appear in the generations between. Now if this happens, your problem is entirely different from what it is with a mother who has a daughter just like herself, or when a father has a son who shares all his tastes and habits, and falls directly into his concerns. One often sees parents who are puzzled in the problem thus presented to them, and quite at loss how to meet it. But as soon as you have found out that there is such a difference in "make-up" as has been described, the problem is much easier. "Put yourself in his place" is the rule which applies here, as it applies in every other point in Christian ethics. The whole matter is very well discussed in Mr. Hamerton's essay on "Fathers and Sons," — an essay which closes with these words: —

"The best satisfaction for a father is to deserve and receive loyal and unfailing respect from his son.

"No, this is not quite the best, not quite the supreme satisfaction of paternity. Shall I reveal the secret that lies in silence at the very bottom of



How to Deal with one's Children 353

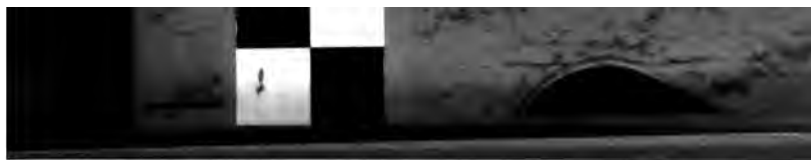
the hearts of all worthy and honorable fathers? Their profoundest happiness is to be able themselves to respect their sons."

Are we not, indeed, always wishing to enlarge the range of home-life and to lift its plane so that the prospect may be more extensive? We are glad to have a new picture on the walls, a new book on the shelves, and in any way to get more extensive outlook upon this world and all other worlds. Now what addition to the life of a home can be equal to this of a new person gaining in resources every day, who has faculties of observation and, indeed, methods of life which were wholly unknown to us before? Here is your daughter, who has brought into the house from the Virginia creeper two or three great beasts which you hate to look upon. They are dirty, you think them ugly, and to you they are in every sense detestable. She pets them as you would pet canary birds. Now there is a very great temptation to you to say that she shall not have these filthy things in her room. You do not like them, therefore she shall not like them. That is the very simple logic. But really this is simply the logic of that father whose two ears vibrate to two different key-notes; who says, therefore, that all music is detestable, and his children shall not learn to sing or play the violin or the piano.

If the children have an ear for music, if, as has been said in another paper of this series, they are fond of it so as to be willing and strong to conquer

the difficulties and do the work required, you must encourage them to do so, whether your ear is accurate or no. And in exactly the same way and for exactly the same reason you must tolerate Ellen's tastes, with her caterpillars, her butterflies, her eggs, her cocoons, and all the rest of it. You must loyally put yourself in her place, as far as you can, help her as far as you can, and encourage her. Let her have all the joy of sympathy and never make her think she is a rebel. You can help her in a thousand ways. And on her part, she must learn to persevere to the end, to hold on to that which she begins upon, to do neatly, thoroughly, and steadily what she does at all. She is to feel also, that these are no matters of hap-hazard, to be begun to-day, and forgotten to-morrow. Remind yourself, also, every day, that the boy has an individual existence of his own. Do not group him with "the children" or "the boys," but grant to him, as a separate being, what that being needs. This remark includes a difficult duty. It is that father and mother recollect how they felt themselves at ten years or at twelve years, — and overcome the very natural habit of making the children younger or less capable than they really are.

There is a capital little treatise by Mr. Jacob Abbott, "Gentle Measures in the Management of the Young," which contains a great deal of practical suggestion, which inexperienced parents will do well to consider, digest, and remember. Much



How to Deal with one's Children 355


of the same philosophy, all based on a simple and intelligent religion, will be found in the Franconia books and the Rollo books. It is the fashion to laugh at these books now, but it will be long before Young America has better reading. It is in one of the Franconia books that the rule is laid down for family education, which really applies in all legislation and in all life: "If you grant, grant cheerfully, — if you refuse, refuse finally." This means that your children are to understand that you have not given your directions thoughtlessly, and that importunity, or what they would call "teasing," is not going to change the decision. As you watch the children on a hotel piazza in summer, in their intercourse with their mothers, you can tell in a minute whether the mothers live by this rule or do not. One set of children will expect to carry their points by making fuss enough about them, while the other set will accept the inevitable at once, and make their arrangements accordingly. This latter set, it may be said in passing, are not only the better children of the two, but they are in fact, the happier; they get a great deal more out of life.

It is to be observed, however, that the two parts of Mr. Abbott's rule belong together. If you mean to refuse finally in this case, you ought to grant liberally in that. And this is from no wretched plan of barter. It is not that you say, "I bought the right to forbid your swimming to-day by letting you go fishing yesterday." That is all very wretched and mean. But you do want to feel

yourself, and you want your children to feel, that on the whole you have great confidence in them. To speak very seriously, you know they are children of God and that you can trust them very largely. If they feel that — because you have granted liberally — they will also feel, when the refusal comes, that you have reason for the refusal, and that they must assent to it. It is very important that they should understand that it is not a matter of whim.

In all this serious discussion of principles it must be remembered that every hour is going to bring up what seem to be abnormal or exceptional cases. The tide does not rise on the beach without constant backward flow of separate waves and storms of spray — drops blown right and left in every conceivable direction. Mr. Emerson's great law, therefore, should never be forgotten. It is the same law which many a nice old grandmother has laid down for many a care-worn young mother terrified by the infinite requisitions of her first baby. "Dear child," the old lady says, and says very wisely, "you must get along as well as you can." Mr. Emerson uses almost the same words in one of his rather celebrated aphorisms. The authority for the statement is easily found and remembered. For if you really trust the Holy Spirit, He will teach you in that same hour what you shall say and what you shall speak.

The present help of a good God has everything to do with the education of children, if we loyally trust to it.



How to Deal with one's Children 357

Dr. Francis Wayland had in his study, on the morning of a college examination day, an anxious mother who had brought her son from home to be entered at Brown University. She was "weeping and wailing" about the probable dangers to which she must leave him in his college life, when Dr. Wayland, who was the president of the college, took his turn in the conversation.

"Madam," said he, "do you suppose God Almighty has forgotten your boy?"

She said with some sobs that she did not.

"Nor do I," said he. "Thus far he has educated his boy with you, and now he proposes to educate him without you."

Any serious man or woman, who will recollect how many valuable lessons he has learned and how many permanent blessings he has received for which he cannot find that any human forethought provided, will be ready to accept Dr. Wayland's lesson.

We will lay down such general principles as we can; from hour to hour we will keep our eyes open to do as well as we can.

And at the same time we will acknowledge that a good God is caring for us and our children, and will order for them some things which we could not devise.

CHAPTER XIII

HOW TO REMAIN YOUNG

IT was very early intimated in these papers that, if they were properly wrought out, each one of them would prove necessary to every other. The careful reader has observed that, in any practical rules for life given in any one of them, it is taken for granted that he who is to apply that rule has applied the others. That is to say, so far as a system of life is suggested here, or the mere skeleton of a system, each part is necessary to each other. It is not pretended that any part of the system will stand alone.

The suggestion was made, in caucus, that in this series of papers one chapter should be devoted to instructions "how to grow old." So soon as this scheme was announced to a person who has proved herself a wise counsellor of our time, she said that that chapter must be complemented by the chapter which the reader now has in hand: "How to Remain Young."

It is to be taken for granted that no one approaches our discussion of this question with any expectation of profit, unless he has fairly applied our previous directions. It is supposed, for instance, that he has accustomed himself, through



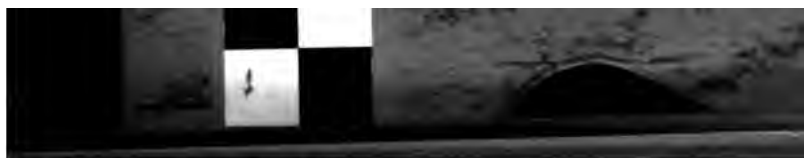
How to Remain Young 359

life, to sleep regularly, to sleep well, and to sleep enough. It is supposed that he is trained as a total abstainer from intoxicating liquors, and that in general he has his physical appetites under sharp and hard control. It is supposed that he takes regular exercise in the open air every day of his life. It is supposed that he has formed many personal habits the importance of which is not less than these now named, which have been discussed in earlier papers; it is supposed that these habits are indeed a second nature to him now, so that obedience to them does not require a separate effort of the will, but follows as a matter of course, as if it were by native impulse. Granted these conditions, it is not so hard for people to remain young as sceptics say.

I. The writer of these lines once placed in the hands of a venerable lady, who at seventy years of age was one of the youngest people in the circle of her friends, the questions proposed in that amusing game which is called "Moral Photography." In this game you ask your friends to write, promptly and without deliberation, the answers to twenty questions about their tastes; such questions as, "What is your favorite flower?" "Who is your favorite poet?" "Who is your favorite hero?" On the list which I gave to my venerable friend was the question, "What is your favorite amusement?" to which she replied immediately, writing, I may say, in utter blindness, "Hearing young people talk."

All her friends knew that this was true. All the young people of the neighborhood knew it. They knew that they were never snubbed when they poured out before her their plans and hopes. They knew that she would be interested when they told her the story of last night's achievements, or yesterday's failures. If they asked advice, they knew that she could put herself in their place. The consequence was that there was a group of them, every afternoon, sitting around her as she knitted in her chair, in the corner of her cheerful and hospitable parlor. So far as they were concerned, they had counsel, encouragement, and sympathy from one of the most accomplished women of her time. And what concerns us now is that she gained in that daily communion with people whose bodies were not worn out, and whose minds had not tried all the leading experiments, the power to look out on the world with eyes that were fresh and young, and to listen with ears that were quick to apprehend.

The first precept is to keep much with the young. For this, you must meet them half-way. "Tom told me that you picked his birds for him yesterday. Did not you hate to?" This was the question put to Tom's aunt. Her answer was, "Yes! I hated to; but I did not let Tom know it. I like to walk with him and I like to have him walk with me, and I did not mean as little a thing as a drop of blood on my fingers should deprive me of that pleasure."



How to Remain Young 361

II. If one is to maintain this intercourse with the young, he must in certain things live in their life. What are those things to be? Do not make the mistake of selecting for your common life with them those occupations or amusements where your declining physical strength contrasts only against their boundless physical vigor. Do not try to pull as good an oar as your young friend, or to play tennis as well as he, or to shoot as many squirrels, or to walk as far. Remember that funny passage which I quoted from Mr. Hamilton, of the contrast between the cow and the antelope. There are plenty of other things where we, who have the advantage of them in years, also have the advantage of them in facility.

First among these is reading. Other things being equal, a person of sixty reads to much more advantage than a person of twenty. He runs his eye over the page more rapidly, he skips, which is to say he selects, more wisely, he rejects nonsense more absolutely, and he knows the meanings of words and understands unexplained allusions more surely. Take care, then, to keep up a line of reading, or perhaps more than one, which will interest your young companions. You will find very soon that you cannot force them to read your favorite books by any expression of your admiration. On the whole, every generation writes its own books, and you and I must not struggle too hard against this law. Thus I have long since given up trying to make my

young friends read Wordsworth, or, as I have said, "Sartor Resartus." Fifty or sixty years ago they moved all the young life of the English reading world. And now all literature is so full of the spirit which thus came in that the young people find the original masters a little commonplace and slow. Do not try, then, to make the young people read your books, but loyally and sympathetically select certain lines in which you will read the books of to-day, and keep more than even, as you can, with your young friends. I knew a charming woman who was not above keeping jam and fruits in her pantry, and a box of good French bonbons upon her table, because she fancied that these carnal inducements tempted boys and girls to look in and see her, perhaps not knowing that they were tempted, on their way home from school. Try that experiment on a high grade. Take care that you have lying about one or more of the very latest and freshest magazines. For many years I had on my study table a basket full of little pictures, riddle-cards, ornamented envelopes, and such little toys, for the children of my acquaintance to pick over. These young people will come for explanation and instruction freely enough, just as soon as they find that you are willing to give either, and that you are really well up with the feeling, movement, and thought of the day.

Oddly enough, young people who are just passing from childhood to manhood or womanhood,



How to Remain Young 363

are generally for a few years very conservative. What they know, which is not much, they have learned chiefly from text-books at school, which are, naturally enough, generally a few years behind the times. Now to cut loose from these acquisitions, which have cost them so much, and which seem to them much more important than they are, is very terrible to them, and you will almost always find that, in serious talk about the problems of the day, you are rather in advance of their speculations. You are willing to swim out into the sea, while they still have their sports upon the beach, and are quite willing to paddle there.

III. Dr. James Jackson, one of the Nestors of medical science in America, himself a wise and useful counsellor of men till he was well-nigh ninety, said that at sixty-five years of age a man in good health is at the prime of his life. This is probably true, though people do not generally think so. Dr. Jackson said that at forty-five the curve of a man's physical power began to decline. Probably he might, in many instances, have fixed that period earlier still. On the other hand, every man gains in experience with every year, so long as his memory serves him, and he gains with every year the advantages, almost incalculable, which result from doing those things by habit and of course, which inexperienced people have to do by constant will and effort. What Dr. Jackson called "the curve of experience" is therefore always rising, — and, for many years of earthly life, the

man does what he does with more ease, though he has not so much force with which to do it. This is because he knows better how it should be done. Now in a certain dim way, young people are conscious of the truth of this law, even in the midst of all that abounding physical strength and unmeasured hope which in another paper I called the omnipotence of seventeen.

To make the best of the power thus gained by experience, we must use it unconsciously. We must not be thinking of ourselves all the time. Indeed, the less we think of ourselves the better, in this matter as in most others. If I am to remain young, I am to do so by virtue of certain infinite qualities, which because they are infinite do not change, which belong to me as a living child of a living God. Now I share these qualities with Him, and indeed with all men and women. Let me make the best of them, then; and let me refrain from much bother or care about the special circumstances which surround me as an individual. For if I fall to talking or thinking a great deal about my appetite, my health, my sleep, my food, my house, my clothes, or in general my belongings, these are all things changeable from their very nature, and belonging to that declining curve of life which marks the increasing feebleness of the physical man. By thinking of them or by talking of them, I compel my young companions to leave their own tropical land of exuberant life, that they may go with me exploring a frozen and desolate



How to Remain Young 365

region to whose habits they are not bred, and of whose ways they know nothing. It is a great deal better for me to join them, as I can, among their palm trees and oranges and bananas and pomegranates and roses, than it is for me to induce them to poke about with me in the short summer of Arctic exploration with such canned tomatoes and pemmican as we can carry in our haversacks.

IV. But nobody ever forgot himself who had to remember to forget himself. You must push the little John Jones or Matilda Skimpole, who is reading this paper, quite out of the way and think of somebody larger, better, and less changeable; and you do this, not by saying, "I will push John Jones out of the way," but by saying, "I will find the something which is larger."

And here it is to be observed that as we advance in life we have a better chance to observe outward nature, and to study her methods and laws, than we have even when we are young. "Nature always gives us more than all she ever takes away." This is John Sterling's way of saying that with every day—and much more with every year—we enter into the heart of nature, feel what is going on in the infinite world of life, and sympathize with its processes.

All this matter of experience helps us. For with every additional observation you are the better able to make the generalizations which unite or harmonize all nature's processes. If you have collected and pressed sea-weeds on the beach in

Nantucket in August, you will be all the more interested in the fronds and leaves of ice which form themselves upon your window-panes in the frosts of January in Minnesota. There is no need of being a professional naturalist. You may make yourself a specialist if you will, but I should say it was quite as well not to be a specialist. You want to see how life runs through every part, and whatever you know of life's triumphs in one way will help you. The most interesting thing to me in Goethe's little book on "Morphology," which is yet so great a book, is that the observations made in it are the observations which any one could make who had the charge of what we call an old-fashioned garden. I mean that there is nothing which requires special instruments. There is no work with the microscope, for instance. There is not even the aggregation of a long series of careful observations, noted down with mechanical care, and kept for comparison. But there is, and that is what interests you, the habit of a man who never looked at a thing without looking at the whole of it. He handled a rose or a buttercup or an acorn as you would handle your baby. He loved it and did not mean to forget it, and never did forget it. And when he found to-day some sport or trick in one of his flowers which he had never noticed before, he remembered another sport or trick which he did notice ten years ago in some garden or forest, and he connected the two.

All this does not mean that your study of nature



How to Remain Young 367

is to be shallow or superficial. Precisely what I would advise people to do, as they grow older, is to select the side of natural science which interests them most, and to try some "sub-soiling." Since you were at school all modern life and thought has been at work re-adjusting the conditions of natural science. The fruit is all ready for you to taste; take it and eat it. Do not leave it like the show fruit at a Horticultural Exhibition, but have the good of it yourself. All these observers and speculators have been at work for you. I heard with delight, two years ago, of an old friend of mine, who was living very happily and freshly somewhere between eighty and ninety, who had sent for some of the best school-books and cyclopedias, that she might study the geography of America. She said that when she went to school they had the States of Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Louisiana, west of the old thirteen, and the rest was all the "Indian Territory" or the "Great American Desert." Now that she had grandsons in Montana and Alaska, I suppose, and granddaughters very likely in Idaho or in Texas, she wanted to know how to place them. And she did not satisfy herself with any hand to mouth provision.

My advice is well enough illustrated by this story. If, for instance, you are fond of a garden and have a garden, do not satisfy yourself with carrying it on as you did thirty years ago. Take the best gardening journal you can find, and study

it carefully. Send for the best books it refers you to, and read them. "Determine," as we have said so often, that in some one point at least that garden shall be in the forefront. In something it shall be a better garden than it could have been thirty years ago. This means that because you have all the minor disadvantages of being thirty years older, you will have all the great advantages which belong to your age.

I have spoken particularly of the study of nature to illustrate the occupation by which you are to keep yourself from thinking about yourself. It is the best illustration, because life in the open air is in itself so healthy and necessary, and also because the American habits, particularly of the large towns, drift so badly into life shut up in what are almost prisons. The truth is that no life has much chance for health or youth in which you are not daily an hour or two in the open air, and the more the better. But I do not mean that the illustration, though it is a good one, is to suggest the only form of the special avocation which you are to take up, so as to feel that you are in the front rank with the people of to-day. Albert Gallatin took to studying the Indian languages; I remember a dear friend, who, at seventy, sent for the best teacher of water color, and began on that fascinating study. Look back on your life and see where your dropped stitches are. Take up some one of them. It may be some puzzle in history which has been left for you to work out. It may

How to Remain Young 369

be some obscure matter in literature, which you can make interesting to yourself and instructive to other people. Or there is some bit of science, which you had to pass by when you were driving the mills to do twenty-four hours' work in a day, and now you have the leisure to attend to it. Simply the rule is, select some one specific interest which you will follow regularly, at least for one hour a day, and in which you will be the equal or the leader of all others.

And here is a reason why, as it seems to me, it is a pity for men in advancing life wholly to "quit business," as the familiar phrase is. Dr. Jackson's instruction was this: "After a man is sixty-five, he should not force himself to his duty." A doctor should so arrange his work as not to be forced to go out at night after that age. A lawyer should satisfy himself with the consultations he can have in his office, and with such other work as he wants to do. A civil engineer must no longer undertake a service which compels him to be in the saddle six hours a day. If this advice is true, an active business man should not, after he is sixty-five, take the executive direction of the work in hand in his establishment. But his value as a counsellor is never greater than it is now.

We make a great mistake in America when we lay our older men on the shelf while they are still in their prime as counsellors. Benjamin Franklin was sent to France as a minister when he was seventy years old, and the best work he did for

his country, he did between his seventy-first and seventy-eighth years. The State of New York had an absurd statute which removed Chancellor Kent from the bench because he was sixty-five. After that time he wrote and published his "Commentaries," a book recognized by every lawyer and statesman as one of the most important books in the study of our jurisprudence. So much good did the country gain from one of the frequent absurdities of New York legislation. In England, Lord Palmerston and Mr. Gladstone are recent instances, well remembered, of the force which statesmen gain, almost by the law of geometrical progression, from their memory of the experiments which have succeeded and the experiments which fail, — from what I called organic connection with the national life of the last two generations.

The truth is that the old analogies and some of the old saws deceive us in our social conditions of to-day, in which life is longer, and the human frame in better order generally, than it was a hundred years ago. Perhaps the lower races of mankind, and the worst fed orders of society, do not show much improvement in the passage of centuries. But in the class of men and women from which leaders are drawn, from which come teachers, authors, law-givers, inventors, or, in general, directors of society, these people are on the average in better condition at seventy than their ancestors were at sixty. They have a better chance

How to Remain Young 371

for life, they have ten years more experience by the measure of time; and by the measure of amount they have a hundred times more. One might not take the risk of conducting a great war, with a Count Von Moltke at the head of one's armies, when he is over eighty years old. But so far as intellectual force goes, and immense experience, with the knowledge of men and certainty what they will do, — so far as these go, the Emperor William has been wise in trusting his affairs to Bismarck, though Bismarck be counted such a very old man. Bismarck is no older at eighty than was Richelieu at three score.

V. To resume very briefly our directions, he who is to remain young is to think of himself very little, to maintain the laws of health which he has learned, to associate largely with young people, to live much in the open air, and in some daily pursuit to try to keep even with the best inquiry of his time. All this requires stern and firm moral force. It requires, as has been said of many other duties in these papers, resolution and determination, which belong only to sons and daughters of God. If they mean to succeed in remaining young, — if, for instance, they mean to carry out such injunctions as have been here given, — they must maintain their intimacy with Him. Their daily affairs must be largely among those matters which do not change, which are the same to-day as they were when the sons of God first shouted for joy. Such realities there are, and one need

not go far to see them. They are as easily found by the dwellers in the cabin last built on a ranch in Montana as they are in any palace in Euclid Avenue, in Piccadilly, or in Rome. The man or woman who finds these eternal realities, and lives in them largely, remains, as a child of God should do, forever young.

CHAPTER XIV

DUTY TO THE CHURCH

[A letter from Randall Ely to Wallace Bishop.]

SHERIDAN CITY, MONTANA, Dec. 9, 1895.

MY DEAR WALLACE,—We are blocked in by a first heavy storm. I am ready for it, and it may snow as long as it wants to, for all me. Among other excellent results, the snow gives me a chance to write to you my long-promised long letter.

What you say in both your last notes interests me, not to say amuses me. For you are, literally, just where I was here, nine years ago, though you are only five hundred miles from your base, which is Chicago, and I am nearly two thousand from mine, which is New Haven. You are in a lumber region; I am in a mining region. You are seeing civilization begin; I saw it begin. You are nine years later in this business. Behold, as the Frenchmen say, all the difference.

And now you want to know what you are to do about the Church. That is just the question I had to answer when I came here.

This place was wholly broken down. The old company had blown up. They had sunk a lot of

money, literally; and, virtually, had never made one cent. Their agents and engineers had hoped to feather their own nests, and had not even done that. They had gone away. There were a few wretched cabins and shanties, in which perhaps two hundred poor creatures hung round, really because they did not know where to go to, — some of them because they had some sort of property here which they could not sell.

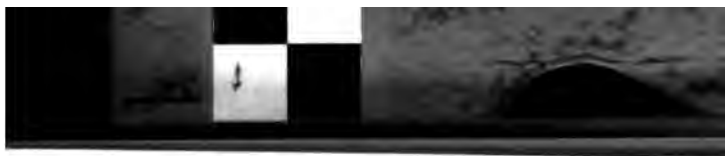
As to morals, — I do not say religion, — as to decency even, or deference to any social standard, there was no such thing, and never had been. Your old joke, about the Laccadive islands, was true here, "As for manners, they had none, and their customs were very filthy."

One of the women put it to me once, in a word. "Before your people came here," said she, "it was Hell." And really it was.

I should be loath to say that the men in charge before me planned the ruin of the men and women here. But I cannot see that they planned their good. And, I tell you, Wallace, there is eternal truth in what Byron makes Satan say:

"He that bows not to God — has bowed to me."

These men — gentlemen, if you please — said to themselves, consciously or unconsciously, "The Company has employed us to make silver here, to open these shafts and to get out this ore. Silver we will make, if we can. On week-days we will work for the Company. BUT, Sundays are



Duty to the Church 375

not the Company's. Sundays are ours, — for ourselves. Sundays we will do as we choose, and the pick-men, and the mule-boys, and their children and their wives may do as they choose."

And if anybody had said that all these people were going to the dogs, the gentlemen in charge would have replied, "That is no concern of ours; we are here to make silver for the Company."

Well, I did not look at it in that way; and I am glad to see that you do not. I am in the same boat with these "people." If they go to the bottom, I shall go to the bottom. And certainly I do not think I shall save my soul if I sit by and see them lose theirs. I had therefore the same question to ask which you are asking.

Well, the organized Church of Christ, whether at Rome, at Princeton, at Baltimore, or at Middletown did not do much to help me. But it did something. In fact it did more than I supposed it would do at the beginning. There was a dear, dried-up little fellow — twice as old as I am — who came round on a little burro he had, about once in six weeks, and held a meeting Sundays. Afterwards, as soon as I gave any signal, I found no lack of fellows among ourselves, most of them good fellows, who were willing to lend a hand.

I came here two or three weeks before my wife did. The plan was that I should make ready for her. As the second Sunday came on I heard that this Elder Breen was to hold service. The

"keeper" of the property, who had been in charge through the interregnum, told me this rather timidly, because he was not sure that he should have given the permission.

But I relieved him there, and told him that Elder Breen would be my guest. And when Saturday noon came, I sent down a boy and a mule to meet the Elder and bring him directly to my cabin. It was but poor hospitality, for we had to make our own coffee, and fry our own pork. But it showed good will, and the old man and I have been good friends from that day. It appeared very soon, as I tell you, that the people in charge before me had not cared for him. And he thanked the Lord very heartily that my heart was warmer.

Well, I put the Elder through with all the honors. I played the flute in those days, and I took my flute to the shop, and played one part of the hymn tune while he sang another. And then, having conferred with him, I announced that there would be a Sunday-school, and that it would begin that day. And then and there it began.

They sent me, well, I guess, fifty volumes, — not what I should have chosen, but much better than nothing. I told that quiet-looking Nadur boy whom you remember, — the same who drove the day we went to the Ledges, — I told him that he must be librarian. They had sent record books and forms, and Jason lent out the books and kept them carefully. The men got interested and



Duty to the Church 377

used to bring in what was left of the books they had picked up on the trains. I wrote home, and made them clear their shelves for me. It was a wretched collection of books; but it was a library, — and, on the whole, it did not do so much harm as equal allowances of poker would have done.

But the “Library” had not been intrusted to us without conditions. We had to maintain a Sunday-school, if we meant to have their Sunday-school Library. And I told Marcus that he must take hold; Julia knew that she must. Mrs. Stevens, as soon as she came, was all ready. And whenever any boy or girl came for books, Jason was coached to say that if they had our books, they must enroll themselves as pupils in the Sunday-school. To tell the truth, they were willing enough. The old owners had never shown any positive interest in the Eternities. They did nothing directly for the morals or the life, indeed, of these people. But nobody in America has dared, as yet, to cut in upon Sunday. So there was no work in the shafts or in the furnace on Sunday; and it was rather a slow day to most of them. Card-playing? Yes, no end of it. Prospecting, hunting, — but no regular work. And the idea of a meeting at the carpenter-shop — call it Sunday-school or call it caucus — was not unpopular.

“Unpopular” is the only word. I mean that without any definite religious conviction which expressed itself in words, there was more than a willingness to see the Sunday-school opened. It

was rather the intention of the community that it should succeed.

Now, do you know, Wallace, I believe that it was rather an advantage to the "movement" that we had nobody of pronounced ecclesiastical training among us. I mean that none of us had ever done this thing before. And none of us had any right way of which he was sure. There was nobody to be dubbed "Elder" or "Reverend" or "Parson" or "Deacon." "We" were simply the agent, and the cashier, and the freight master, whom these men and women had had to do with Saturday, and would have to do with Monday.

"Also, especially," as my old German master would have said, no one of us would have been selected as a Sunday-school teacher in the First Presbyterian Church in New Wittenburg, or in the Second Methodist Church in Epworth. So that each of the other fellows whom you could most rely upon for any public-spirited enterprise laughed when he found that he must be a Sunday-school teacher.

For me, I said squarely to the little crew of us who organized the thing, that I should only make a Bible lesson ridiculous. But I would have a class on the Constitution of the United States. I said that there was religion enough in it, if only a man could "distil it out." And I said that I believed more men and women from the teamsters' families and the shaft-men would come to my class after the second Sunday, than if I taught about



.Duty to the Church 379

the book of Deuteronomy, of which, indeed, I knew nothing.

And I remember that Mrs. McGregor told the company what Freeman Clarke said to her. He had bidden her take a class in his Sunday-school. She had said that she did not know enough. To which he replied, that if she had thought she knew enough he would not have asked. "But I suppose," said he, "that you could read the Swiss Family Robinson to a class." Of course she had to confess she could. "Do that," said Dr. Clarke. "If you can entertain for an hour eight little street children who have little enough love in their lives, they will learn by the object lessons that somebody loves them, and they will have their first lesson in bearing each other's burdens."

And, in point of fact, Mrs. McGregor did begin with the Swiss Family Robinson, with those Finn children,—nine or ten of them. "The tempest had now lasted eight days,"—what a happy beginning!

No, none of us knew much about theology. Indeed, as to our religion, as the old joke says, we had none to speak of. But we did mean that that camp should have more life in it, and that it should be a better place to live in.

The first experiment we tried, after the beginning with the library, was the music. Tisdale undertook that, and Janet. And they made the people understand that they really wanted a crowd to come. It was rather hard for the rest of us, at

first, to keep our classes up in face of their competition. Before the thing had gone far, we had to leave the whole carpenter-shop to them; and I fitted up the attic over our offices for the other classes of the school. But this was not popular, and it ended in the music class having its meeting after the other school was over, so that a good many of our classes lapped over and went to them.

Tisdale used to talk like an oracle about this. "All music is religious," he would say. "Music is the first handmaid of religion." He had something he quoted from Collins's odes which we used to chaff him about. Practically, he would say, in a mining camp or in a forecastle, you can get more people to sing together than to do anything else together. "And TOGETHER," he would say, with one of his grand gestures, "TOGETHER, as the Dominie says, is the central word."

So he was very tolerant when they began, as to what they sang. A good many of them were old soldiers, and they would sing, "Marching through Georgia," and "John Brown's body." But the handful of women, not to say some of the men, knew the words of familiar hymns, and all of them soon caught on to the Sankey rhythms and cadences, the time and the airs. Tisdale made an old Welsh smelter we had, named Jones, dig to the bottom of his blue chest, and exhume a violin which by this time had neither bridge, nor bow, nor strings, nor key-board. But Tisdale sent down



Duty to the Church 381

to Cheyenne City for these, and the next Sunday Jones appeared with his fiddle and I with my flute. Tisdale said he would order jews-harps for the crowd, if any one would volunteer. He said jews-harps were the fit instruments for the Psalms of David and Asaph, and could hang on the willows when we were not practising. In fact we never had any. But the fiddle and the flute gave courage for other instruments, and Tom, Dick, and Harry did what they could.

All this did no end of good, in bringing men and women together on a decent basis. Drinking men and teetotalers, Americans and foreigners, the office-clerks and the shaft-hands would sit side by side, holding the same music-book. If the thing had been forced, nothing would have been more absurd than to see Carruthers, the cashier, sitting on the same bench with old Cesar the black man from the stables. But, really, Cesar's was the best voice among the basses, while Carruthers directed from that bench. And when they took the same book, of course, and unconsciously, I, who was nothing but a high private, felt that the kingdom of God had come.

Oh dear! If you could only have seen how we astonished the dear old Elder by our first performance. He was not to arrive until eleven o'clock. He had stayed at the Crossing, where the old shaft was begun, with Flinders, who was my man in charge there. He had some sort of meeting in Flinders's shed, and then Flinders brought

him up to us. Well! the dear old saint did not expect the music of the spheres. He and I could grind through Antioch and Benevento. But from the people—why, we had had no books, and he expected nothing. But this time, when he and Flinders came within hearing, there was the sound of many waters. The Hallelujah Chorus, it may have been. We did not stop when they came in. And the old man, as we all called him (forty-eight years, in fact), may well have imagined that he was on one of the outside benches of the Paradiso. The place was crowded already; and I remember that so many people came that we had to carry the two carpenter's chests which made the pulpit out of doors, and the people sat under the shade of what the Elder was pleased to call a "green bay-tree." (I remember that afterwards in some double patent revised version I found that this was a terebinth-tree.)

Well, that was our first full service, and the fame of it went far and wide; wherever a burro could climb that week, the word went that we had had a real meeting at the "hollow," with a fiddle and sackbut and real cornet; and that there was a "lib'ry" there, and first-rate fixings in general. I soon found that whether I meant it or not, we should have a larger concourse the next Sunday than we had had. But I was not frightened now we were all in for it. I sent word to all the other camps that we wanted them to come over, and to the men whom I could rely upon, whether foremen



Duty to the Church 383

or pick-men, I sent personal word that we should rely on them to help us through, whether in the way of prayer or exhortations. Before the Elder's Sunday came round again things were running as regularly as an inclined railway. And although the old man came eight times in the year till he froze to death in that awful blizzard, we came to think that our own meetings were quite as profitable as his.

When the first winter came, I took care that our second ore-shed should be cleaned out, and we planked up the sides with one window in each side, so that we need not sit in pitchy darkness. And this served us for our meeting-house till we built this nice little shebang which we have. I made the company order two large stoves for me at St. Louis. To tell you the whole truth, I think we got along better without a minister. Whenever we did not have one, we had no talk about heresy.

Truly yours,

RANDALL ELY.

CHAPTER XV

DUTY TO THE STATE

The Young Citizen

WHAT can young people do for good citizenship and public spirit?

I am afraid that the question first makes people think of elections and primary meetings, votes and voters.

To consider such matters first or chiefly would be a very narrow view of a very important matter.

The truth is that all our American institutions rest on the passion for freedom and free thought in every man and woman. This passion took form in English life as long ago as Alfred; it came to America with the very best of the Englishmen of the Puritan age; it is all wrought in with all the American arrangements for the State, and with most of the American arrangements for the Church. Good citizenship in America means the maintenance of this central idea of personal freedom and personal duty. It involves the right of private judgment and the duty of private judgment, and the American constitutions all rest on the presumption that almost all citizens will insist on the right and discharge the duty.

Duty to the State 385

Good citizenship means the determination of each man to do his own duty to the State. He will not be led by a boss. He will not be ordered by any lord, feudal or ecclesiastical. He will stand for his own rights, and for the equal rights of every other man. And this is as true of women as of man. In this view, the inability of woman to vote becomes, in comparison, unimportant, so large is woman's opportunity to discredit and destroy feudal or ecclesiastical control of individual opinion, whether attempted by fashion, by the Church, or by whatever outside tyranny.

The first, second, and last duty of every good citizen, man or woman, is to level up the people whom they can act upon. Let them highly resolve that each one of them shall vote, act, live, move, and have a being as an independent child of an Infinite God. Not one person in the body political shall be a slave. And no baron or squire or knight of the shire shall enslave one of them. No overseer with a whip, no boss with a list of followers, no liquor dealer with an unpaid bill, no ecclesiastic with threats of hell, no chief of Tammany or head centre of a lodge shall enslave them. To maintain and to enlarge the individual's passion and his right to think for himself, to say what he thinks, and to do what he says, is the first duty of the young American.

Simply, the first duty of the young American is to keep the People up to its work. The People

must be able to carry forward the great responsibilities of sovereignty which devolve upon the People; the People must not fall backward; the People must go forward. And this cannot be unless every man, woman, and child who has a conscience is personally enlisted in the duty of keeping the People up to its duty and destiny.

In comparison with this necessity pressing on every man, woman, and child, the special cares of an election are the merest trifles. The result of an election, indeed, really depends on what the People is or is not. The election infallibly goes well when the People of a region has been well trained for the duty it has in hand; and almost infallibly the election goes ill in a region where the People has not been so trained. That is to say, in one instance you get good candidates offered by all parties, and you therefore have a successful election. In the other instance, you probably have bad candidates offered by all parties, or whatever the candidates, you are almost sure of a bad selection. The real work is not the fussy work of caucuses and committees; it is done in advance in the training of the People.

It follows then for young men or young women making the arrangements of life, that they must determine how and where they will serve the commonwealth; how and where they will serve it every day.

There is a certain danger to the young American if he rests too much upon the impression which he



Duty to the State 387

gains from literature. And in practice, I find myself saying to boys, "You are not to be an English duke, living on his estates in the country," or to a girl, "You are not to be a Lady Bountiful, carrying a bottle of sherry in a basket to a peasant's cottage, and followed by a servant with a pair of blankets." Why, there is not a duke within three thousand miles of you, and there is not a peasant any nearer! It is really an important part of your education that you should know your own country. You must understand America. I may add it is a very difficult part. Books, as I have said, do not help you much. The newspapers help you very little. They are, almost without exception, provincial and local. You will have to learn for yourselves. By far the best thing which a boy gets in college is his acquaintance with companions from distant States, possibly from Mexico and Canada. Young people especially should recollect this, and by system acquaint themselves with all sorts and conditions of men. *Together*, which is the central word of Christianity, is the central word of a Commonwealth or Republic. Let us never forget that what we call a Christian Commonwealth is what the Saviour of Men called the Kingdom of God. Of that kingdom the central principle is, that the children of God shall bear each other's burdens. If they must do this, why, of course, they must learn each how his brother lives, — nay, what his brother is.

In a small village, or a country town, till its

population comes to ten or twenty thousand, some of the important details in this matter take care of themselves. Generally speaking, though with certain exceptions, everybody knows everybody. All the children in the same neighborhood go to school together. There are no very sharp or hard social distinctions, and practically every one knows how everybody else lives. Now the difficulty of finding out how other people live is the first difficulty in the study of citizenship.

Even in a small country town, however, there is apt to be one place for observation and for work which needs special attention of people who care about citizenship. Almost infallibly in some out of the way corner, perhaps three or four miles from the centre, there is a precinct of shanties or broken-down houses, dirty, hateful, and every way neglected, inhabited by a set of half outlaws whom "nobody knows." They are outside the pressure of all public opinion. Such a place is generally known by some slang name, such as "hell corner," or the "devil's den." In extreme cases, you shall read that the inhabitants of the neighborhood, with a certain indignation which they think righteous, move upon such a place, warn out the inhabitants, and burn their houses down. But this is a very crude way of handling such an evil; you move the place, but do not cure the wound. Now the first thing to be done towards a cure is that the good citizens of that place shall learn all about this corner. They must find out who these squatters



Duty to the State 389

are, how they live there, and why they live there. They must take the same interest in them which they take in some mission Sunday-school to which they contribute in India, and they must know much more about the detail.

In larger towns, the difficulty is to find how people live who are close by you. Here the week-day life of the churches ought to give a good opening. It is a very good thing when an intelligent leader in the community brings down his own magic lantern to the vestry of a church to entertain fifty or sixty errand-boys, cash-boys, hostlers, newsboys, and others who would be a little apt to be loafing on street corners, if he and people like him were not making their acquaintance. It is a very good thing when a professor in a college, perhaps the best read man in town, makes a regular business in visiting in their houses all the members in his Bible class. It will prove, very likely, before a year is over that such teachers have learned quite as much as they have taught.

I do not mean that there is any mechanical school, or formal organization, by which the people of a great city can learn what is so hard to know, how their neighbors live. As with all other learning, the secret is in this, you must want to know. There is no catechism to teach the method. You must always go a little more than half way, and then the social gulfs will bridge themselves, the broken bits in your mosaic will of themselves fuse together.

With such a beginning, you can go forward. You are able now to teach and to learn, and you are not well engaged unless you are doing both. Suppose you are a visitor on the staff of some charity organization. If you keep your eyes open, and your ears open, you will have learned quite as much before the winter is over from this family which you are to care for, as you have taught to them. Among other things, you will have learned the lesson that money is not the most important commodity in the world. A little money may go a great way, used as it should be.

But money without tenderness or sympathy, when money is mere alms-giving, is of so little use that critics have a very good right to say that it is of none. If it only brings into the house so much bread and milk and meat which tide along wretched physical life for two days or four days or six, it is hard to say that money is of any use at all. As Rufus Ellis said so well, "You do a man no good unless you make him better."

Bear this in mind then in such "visiting," that it is yourself which you take into the house. If you go to teach, expect to be taught; if you mean to give, expect to receive; if you hope to lead, be willing to be led. "Give and take" is the rule, or it embodies the principle.

But young man or young woman who does seek to be of use thus to people in more unfortunate life, is soon terribly tested. There is absolutely no romance in the matter. There is less romance



in it in any Atlantic American city than anywhere else in the world. For here the poor people you would help are probably separated from you, as they are in daily occupation. Bishop Phillips Brooks used to say that Philadelphia had an advantage over most American cities, because the narrow streets were mixed up with the broad ones, and the people with the largest means lived within easy touch of people with the smallest. It used to be said of Paris before the days of "elevators," that there was a real social advantage in the pecuniary arrangement by which people paid a small rent if they lived a hundred feet from the sidewalk, while they were yet living close to richer families who lived in lower stories of the same house.

Easy communication between people in different degrees of prosperity is in itself a minor advantage. But suppose it do not exist. Where there is a will, there is a way, and I should be sorry to believe that I have any readers who cannot find an Italian fellow-citizen, if they want to talk Italian. If we want to "touch elbows with the rank and file," we can do so. "Some of my neighbors tell me that they have so many pears that they cannot tell what to do with them." Judge Thomas said this to me one day, and he added, "I have a great many in my own orchard, and if I send them to the right places, I do not find that they come back to me."

I hope, however, that no reader will be misled

by this illustration which, for mere convenience, I have taken from the physical relief of the poor in cities. To suppose that that form of charity is the first or chief duty of a public-spirited citizen is wholly un-American. The truth is, that in some towns, quite large, there is no poverty of that sort. In many towns there is very little, and we are making it less and less all the time. There is "not poverty enough to go round," if we mean to rely on the physical relief of the very poor for our training in public spirit. It will not happen to one in twenty of the readers of these lines that his duty to society is with the starving or the naked. Very likely he would not know how to deal with them if his duty were there. The truth is, that each of us needs a great deal from each other. Let the reader ask himself how much he needs from the people around him. The richest man and woman both need a great deal. And all these "great deals" will not and cannot be supplied without that steady toning up of all social life to which the gospel sends us. Looking back on life, — if I may speak of my own work, — I think God has let me be of much more use to one or two Japanese gentlemen of high rank and fortune than I ever was to any Italian beggar. In finding out your place to take hold then, in finding where your apostleship is to send you, dismiss at once this Old World notion that only those people are poor who have not good clothes. Remember that everybody is poor; that it is fortunate for

you and me that it is so; that you and I are as poor as the rest of them. It is because each of us needs something that each of us, without a trace of condescension, should find his place and do his share.

No man or woman can reject such duty and retain any sense of honor. Look around you in the place where you live, and see how much has been done in the past for you which you are enjoying to-day. Pioneers have broken the ground; wise men have made plans, and strong men have carried them out,—all that you may go and come with the comforts you enjoy. In my own home, the city of Boston, the wealth in common of the people, the amount of property which has been invested for the common good, is estimated at two hundred and fifty millions of dollars. The annual interest on this at four per cent is ten million dollars, which represents the annual cost of the comforts which I, and those like me, enjoy, in the social order of that town, wholly apart from such service as is paid for by the annual taxation. This is not an exceptional case, but it is a good, convenient illustration of what would be found true in every American State, so large has always been the provision made in the past for the future.

In mere decency and honor I must do my share in handing down such a future as that to those who come after me. I will not drink at such a fountain, and sully the water for those who follow me, or let other people sully it. I am bound in

honor to keep high the social life of a city so endowed, that God may find the children as well off as were their fathers.

I should hope that any young man or young woman might approach social duties with some sense of the varied acts of friendship, due from each to all, which a republic demands. When you open a club for working girls, when you arrange a Christmas tree, when you go to some chapel to teach a boy arithmetic, or to the industrial schools to teach drawing or cooking or singing, or to make an evening pass with some glimpse of life higher than what the streets have to offer,—you are working out your share of the citizen's duty to the State. You have your hand then in a great political problem—the greatest of all. Short-sighted people will ask you whether you ever went to a “primary meeting,” as they call it; and how you can pretend to be a good citizen unless you have been there. I certainly think that young men will learn some things they had better know, if they should go there, and that the primary may be improved by their presence. But he has a very fair answer who can say, “The night you were at your primary, I was teaching German boys to read English.” You and I have a more pressing duty in the making good citizens than we have in offering good candidates. This we ought to do; but we ought not to leave the other undone. You never find, when an election is over, that the distress of defeat hangs over

the moral and peaceful and intelligent communities. Republican government works well enough with them. It is in your "Five Points," it is in your "Bloody Fifth," and your "Black Fortieth," that come in the fraud and the fighting which make those men despair of a democracy, who have done nothing to make things better. And, as always, the remedy is a larger dose of applied Christianity. The "Bloody Fifth" and the "Black Fortieth" are to be purified and ventilated by the hand-to-hand contagion of the Golden Rule, of the Good Samaritan, of Christian love. It is true that your working girls' clubs, your Sunday-school missions; what you do for fine arts; what you do for health and hospitality and the beauty of the town; your Christmas trees, your free library, your Christian Union and Associations, and your Christian church which inspires and dominates all of these, — it is here that they are looking and tending. And you are much more closely engaged in the duty of a citizen to the State, when you are at work in this hand-to-hand affair, than you are when you are delivering a speech before a caucus, or writing a political article for a review.

And, as we saw, we are not to consider the "Bloody Fifth" or the "Fighting Fortieth" alone. All human society is to be made divine, the finest as the coarsest. That is our business. Euclid and Michigan Avenues, the Fifth Avenue and Columbia Heights need divine life as well as

any Italian or Chinese colony. Does not every morning newspaper show that the duty and difficulty of the hour spring from a certain jealousy which people try to excite between men of small incomes and men of large incomes? What have you who read, or I who write, done to allay that jealousy, or to prove that it is unfounded? It is but a few days since I heard a foreman in a gigantic corporation, when he was asked why they had no strikes among the thousands of men in their employ. His proud answer was, "Our first and constant effort is to put no men in the lead who do not understand the workmen and sympathize with them, and I think the men know and trust their leaders." There is a bit of applied Christianity which the reader and I may well take to heart. We shall do well, wherever we are, if we keep in view an ideal as noble as that, and bring society to act upon it.

It is, of course, impossible, in a paper like this, to try to assign to any reader the detail of such social duty which he is to follow. But this is clear enough. Each of us, in making his own choice, as each of us must, is to remember this intimacy of man with man, and woman with woman, touches close on the immediate questions of government. It touches them, because it gives the suffrage to men, and takes it from slaves. You make men respect themselves. They refuse, at that moment, to take this bribe for their vote, or to follow that



Duty to the State 397

banner, or, which is as bad and more mean, they refuse to escape a tax, or to stay away from an election. Your republic is no longer ruled by an oligarchy, say of one third of the citizens. Men who respect themselves insist on giving themselves to the better policy of the city, of the State or the nation. And it is not one vote which such a man gives, or two. It is his moral power, his intellectual direction, which is uplifting all the time the thought and will of those who are around him. The great issue goes to an intelligent and conscientious jury, — the men and women who have highly determined that there shall be no class of drudges, and no stinking slums, omnipotent in appointing that high tribunal.

THE END





